

RosettaStone®

Curriculum Text

English US | Level 3

English



Language Learning Success™

RosettaStone®

Curriculum Text

English US

Level 3

English



Language Learning Success™

TRS-ENG3-1.3

ISBN 978-1-58022-210-5

All information in this document is subject to change without notice. This document is provided for informational purposes only and Rosetta Stone Ltd. makes no guarantees, representations or warranties, either express or implied, about the information contained within the document or about the document itself. Rosetta Stone®, Language Learning Success™, and Dynamic Immersion™, are trademarks of Rosetta Stone Ltd.

Copyright © 2007 Rosetta Stone Ltd. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

Rosetta Stone

Harrisonburg, Virginia USA

T (540) 432-6166 • (800) 788-0822 in USA and Canada

F (540) 432-0953

RosettaStone.com

Contents

TRANSPORTATION

Unit 1 Picture Lessons

1-01	Walking	3
1-02	Biking.....	4
1-03	Buses	5
1-04	Taxis.....	6
1-05	Cars	7
1-06	Driving.....	8
1-07	Airplanes and Airports	9
1-08	Boats, Subways, and Trains	10
1-09	Hotels.....	11
1-10	Information, Directions, and Miscellaneous	12
1-11	Review Lesson	13

Unit 2 Video Lessons: Getting Home from the Airport

2-01	Arriving at the Airport.....	15
2-02	Getting the Phone.....	16
2-03	At the Information Desk	16
2-04	Renting a Car	18
2-05	Trying the Bus	20
2-06	Calling a Cab	22

Unit 3 Narrative Lessons

3-01	Kate's Diary	32
3-02	Jim's Diary	33
3-03	Jim's Travel Experiences	35
3-04	Getting Around with Jim.....	36
3-05	The History of Travel	38
3-06	Grammar: Negative Constructions	40
3-07	Grammar: Indirect Speech	41
3-08	Grammar: Causative Constructions.....	43

HOUSING

Unit 4 Picture Lessons

4-01	Kitchen.....	47
4-02	Location: Country, City, Suburb	48
4-03	Utilities and Services	49
4-04	Bedroom, Bath, Laundry.....	50
4-05	Renting and Buying	51
4-06	Looking for a New Residence.....	52
4-07	Dining Room, Living Room, Office.....	53
4-08	Repairs and Maintenance	54
4-09	When Things Go Wrong.....	55
4-10	What to Do and Where to Do It	56
4-11	Review Lesson	57

Unit 5 Video Lessons: Finding a Place to Live

5-01	Not Enough Room	60
5-02	A Carryout Dinner	62
5-03	Difficulty Unpacking	62
5-04	Finding an Apartment	64
5-05	Big Kitchen, Small Ledge	66
5-06	Two Bedrooms and a Yard	66
5-07	Negotiating the Lease	68

Unit 6 Narrative Lessons

6-01	Kate's Diary	79
6-02	Jim's Diary	80
6-03	The Landlord Speaks of Housing	82
6-04	The History of Buildings	83
6-05	Grammar: Articles and Indefinite Adjectives.....	85
6-06	Grammar: Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns	86
6-07	Grammar: Verb Tenses	87

SHOPPING**Unit 7 Picture Lessons**

7-01	Entertainment	91
7-02	Specialty Stores	92
7-03	Making Selections	93
7-04	Ordering Products	94
7-05	Services	95
7-06	Restaurants	96
7-07	Kinds of Stores; Prices.....	97
7-08	Locations	98
7-09	Accounts	99
7-10	Being a Smart Consumer	100
7-11	Review Lesson	101

Unit 8 Video Lessons: Buying Groceries

8-01	Out of Food	104
8-02	Grocery Shopping	104
8-03	Choosing Products	106
8-04	Variety of Items	106
8-05	Getting Help.....	108
8-06	Checking Out.....	110

Unit 9 Narrative Lessons

9-01	Kate's Diary	120
9-02	Jim's Diary	121
9-03	Shopping With Kate	123
9-04	Kate's Finances.....	124
9-05	The History of Shopping.....	126
9-06	The History of Money.....	128
9-07	Grammar: Indefinite Pronouns	129
9-08	Grammar: Verbals	131
9-09	Grammar: Conjunctions	132

EMPLOYMENT

Unit 10 Picture Lessons

10-01	Kinds of Jobs	137
10-02	Where and How We Work	138
10-03	Finding a Job	139
10-04	Training	140
10-05	Buying and Selling	141
10-06	Serving and Assisting	142
10-07	Building and Creating	143
10-08	Wages	144
10-09	Job Situations	145
10-10	Unusual Jobs, Workers, and Tools.....	146
10-11	Review Lesson	147

Unit 11 Video Lessons: A New Job

11-01	Problems with Jim's Job	150
11-02	Finding a New Job	150
11-03	The Resume	152
11-04	The Interview	152
11-05	A Job Offer.....	154

Unit 12 Narrative Lessons

12-01	Kate's Diary	163
12-02	Jim's Diary	165
12-03	Jim's Jobs	167
12-04	Reading with Kate	168
12-05	The History of Employment	170
12-06	The History of Writing	172
12-07	The History of Photography	174
12-08	Grammar: Relative Pronouns	176
12-09	Grammar: Subjunctive Mood	177
12-10	Grammar: Prepositions.....	179

TRANSPORTATION

Contents

Unit 1 Picture Lessons

1-01	Walking	3
1-02	Biking.....	4
1-03	Buses	5
1-04	Taxis	6
1-05	Cars	7
1-06	Driving.....	8
1-07	Airplanes and Airports	9
1-08	Boats, Subways, and Trains.....	10
1-09	Hotels.....	11
1-10	Information, Directions, and Miscellaneous	12
1-11	Review Lesson	13

Unit 2 Video Lessons: Getting Home from the Airport

2-01	Arriving at the Airport.....	15
2-02	Getting the Phone	16
2-03	At the Information Desk	16
2-04	Renting a Car	18
2-05	Trying the Bus	20
2-06	Calling a Cab	22

Unit 3 Narrative Lessons

3-01	Kate's Diary	32
3-02	Jim's Diary	33
3-03	Jim's Travel Experiences	35
3-04	Getting Around with Jim.....	36
3-05	The History of Travel.....	38
3-06	Grammar: Negative Constructions	40
3-07	Grammar: Indirect Speech	41
3-08	Grammar: Causative Constructions.....	43

1-01 Walking

- 01 These walkers have to stay together for safety. These walkers have to stay together in order to sound and look good. This walker likes to walk alone. These walkers don't have to stay together, but they want to.
- 02 If Ann is going to be walking around the house, she will be comfortable in these. If Ann is going to be outside walking, she should probably wear these. If Ann doesn't want to get lost, she should probably carry one of these. If Ann is walking in the rain, she should probably carry one of these.
- 03 When you're walking in the summer, this will help cool you down. If you're tired of walking, you can rest here. You can listen to music on this when you're walking. You can talk to your friends on this when you're walking.
- 04 Walking made her tired. Being taken on a walk made him tired. Robert got bored with walking. He decided to get around on these instead. Walking doesn't work too well when you're going down a snowy mountain. This works a lot better.
- 05 Ann is going to a store downtown. It is a half a mile away and parking is difficult. It makes sense for her to get there this way. Ann is going to see her doctor. His office is four miles away. The quickest way to get there is a busy highway. It makes sense for her to get there this way. Ann is going to work. Her office is two miles away. There's a nice path through the woods that leads from her house to her office. It makes sense for her to get there this way. Ann lives in the United States but is going on vacation in England. If she wants to get there quickly, this is her only option.
- 06 Cars, bikes, and pedestrians all have to stop here when the bar is lowered. Cars, bikes, and pedestrians all have to stop here when the light is red. Pedestrians need to stop here and wait until no cars are coming. This means pedestrians can cross the intersection.
- 07 This is an unusual way to carry your money when you're walking. This is a common way for women to carry their money when they're walking. This is an unusual way for a man to commute to work. This is a common way for a man to commute to work.
- 08 This helps pedestrians and bikers to get the fluid they need. This helps cars to get the fluids they need. You wouldn't want to carry these home. Carrying these home wouldn't be a problem.
- 09 You wouldn't want to walk in this weather. Most people wouldn't want to bike this far. You wouldn't want to paddle this from Lisbon to New York. You wouldn't want to fly in this from Paris to Amsterdam.
- 10 This can be an exhausting way to get from one place to another. This can be a restful way to get to work. This can be a frustrating way to get to work. This isn't the quickest way to cross the ocean, but it is sometimes the nicest.

1-02 Biking

- 01 He always stops here, whether he's riding his bike or driving his car.
He wears this when he's riding his bike, but not when he's driving his car.
If he is wearing this, he'd rather drive.
When he is wearing this, he's not dressed to ride his bike or drive.
- 02 He carries his books in this when he's biking.
He needs his key to unlock this.
He needs this to inflate his tires.
His girlfriend rode his bike last. He needs to adjust this.
- 03 Sometimes cars have to get out of the way of bicycles.
Sometimes cars transport bicycles.
He prefers to ride on streets like this.
He prefers to avoid streets like this.
- 04 If Andy and Sue can agree on where they want to go, they can ride this.
If you are very small, you may need an extra wheel.
Riding a bike can be exhausting.
Riding a bike can be exhilarating.
- 05 The owner of this bike is very concerned about security.
The owner of this bike is not very concerned about security.
A bike owner doesn't have to remember to do this.
This person doesn't care how long bikes are parked.
- 06 Some people would love to spend a day biking here, but they'd better like the wilderness and wear a helmet.
Almost no one would like to bike in this weather.
Not everyone who wants to bike here can. You have to be very fast.
Almost anyone can bike here.
- 07 Bike riders can park their bikes almost anywhere.
Drivers cannot park their cars wherever they want.
These help you to see in the sun.
This helps you to stay dry in the rain.
- 08 It's a good thing he carries an air pump with him when he rides.
It's a good thing he carries an extra chain with him when he rides.
He is thirsty. He's glad he has this with him.
If he is thirsty and has forgotten his water bottle, he'll be glad to ride past this.
- 09 Parked cars can be as dangerous as moving cars.
He wears this to make riding at night safer.
He wears this to make riding safer at any time of day.
A bike lane on the road makes riding safer.
- 10 This child is old enough to ride this bike.
This child isn't old enough to ride this bike.
This looks like a popular destination for bikers.
She likes biking here because there aren't many other bikers around.

1-03 Buses

- 01 A bus that travels long distances has one of these so it won't have to make frequent stops.
A bus that stops frequently and has a lot of people getting on and off has one of these so passengers can exit more efficiently.
A bus that travels long distances requires that you buy one of these before you board.
A bus that makes frequent stops collects fares as passengers board.
- 02 You need to have exact change for this.
You don't need to have exact change if you buy your ticket here.
This is good for ten rides.
This is good for a round trip.
- 03 A bus probably hasn't come by here in a while.
Either a bus was just here, or this bus stop isn't used by many people.
This will tell you the times that a bus arrives at this stop.
This will tell you where buses go in this city.
- 04 In bad weather, I'd rather wait at this bus stop.
In bad weather, I hate waiting at this bus stop.
It doesn't matter what the weather is when you're waiting at the station.
If the weather is like this, you probably don't want to go anywhere.
- 05 You can't do this if you're riding a bike or driving.
You're not allowed to do this on most buses.
Robert has \$5.00. He's twenty miles from home.
He can only afford to get home on this.
John has \$50.00. He's five miles from home.
He can afford to get home in this.
- 06 She commutes on the bus every day. It's probably more economical to buy this.
She only rides the bus once in a while.
She pays for the bus this way.
She is following this route. She'll buy a round-trip ticket.
She is following this route. She'll buy a one-way ticket.
- 07 This is the route of an express bus.
This is the route of a local bus.
This fare box accepts dollar bills.
This fare box accepts only coins.
- 08 This bus stops frequently.
This bus stops infrequently.
He'll need to transfer from one bus to another to get from here to there.
He can get from here to there on a direct line.
- 09 This isn't the kind of bus you take to work or on a trip.
If not many people use your bus line, you might end up riding something like this.
If a lot of people ride your bus line, you might end up riding something like this.
If you live in a small town, your bus station might look like this.
- 10 This is for a big city bus station.
This is for a small town bus station.
This bus arrives at the same time every day.
They don't need a schedule.
Who knows whether this bus will arrive at all?

1-04 Taxis

- 01 This is a great place for a cab driver to wait for passengers.
This is a terrible place for a cab driver to wait for passengers.
The cab company doesn't want to see one of these pulling their cab.
Cab companies test their drivers on how well they know the city. They don't want to see a driver reading one of these.
- 02 This is the most crowded and least expensive way to take a cab.
This is the most comfortable and most expensive way to take a cab.
Passengers leave these in cabs if it has recently been sunny.
Passengers leave these in cabs if it has been raining recently.
- 03 Cab drivers make more money in weather like this.
Cab drivers make less money in weather like this.
Passengers are expected to tip the driver.
Cab drivers try to be courteous to their passengers.
- 04 This cab hasn't left yet.
This cab is on its way.
This kind of seat is common in cabs.
This kind of seat is not common in cabs.
- 05 When he is at an out-of-the-way location, he calls ahead for a taxi.
When he is on a busy street, he gets a taxi this way.
When he is at the airport, he gets a taxi here.
He is not waiting for a taxi. He will take this.
- 06 If you have a medical emergency, this is better than a cab.
If you have a large item to transport, this is better than a cab.
If you aren't going far and don't have much to carry, this can be easier than a cab.
If you have time to wait and know the schedule, this can be better than a cab.
- 07 This cab is for hire.
This cab is not for hire.
Luggage can go in the trunk.
Passengers don't go in the trunk.
- 08 You might have to give the cab driver directions on how to get here.
You probably don't have to give the cab driver directions on how to get here.
This doesn't stop running, even if you're stopped at a light or you're lost.
Someone left this in the cab.
- 09 She uses a cab to go grocery shopping.
She uses a cab to take her grandson to the zoo.
She takes a cab to school on days her mother can't drive her.
She is taking a cab because she thinks she's too dressed up for the subway.
- 10 To get a cab, I call ahead.
To get a cab, I wave my arm and shout, "Taxi!"
I don't have enough money for a cab. I'll have to take this.
I don't need a cab. I live nearby.

1-05 Cars

- 01 She wanted a roomy minivan, and he wanted a fast sports car. They compromised on a sport utility vehicle.
He wanted an elegant sedan, and she wanted a truck with a lot of cargo space. They compromised on a station wagon.
They both wanted a lot of space to drive their children around. They agreed to buy a minivan. They both wanted an inexpensive car that won't use too much gasoline. They agreed to buy a small hatchback.
- 02 This car has a manual transmission.
This car has an automatic transmission.
You should always wear this when you are driving a car.
If a small child is riding in your car, he or she should be in one of these.
- 03 She is adjusting the rear-view mirror.
She is adjusting the left side-view mirror.
She is adjusting the settings on the heater.
She is adjusting the radio.
- 04 This car needs to go to a gas station.
This car needs to have its oil changed.
The speed limit is 45 mph. This car needs to slow down.
The speed limit is 55 mph. This car needs to speed up.
- 05 This car is about to turn left.
This car is braking.
This car has its headlights and windshield wipers on.
This car had better have its emergency brake on.
- 06 To unlock the door, you put the key here.
To unlock the trunk, you put the key here.
To start the car, you put the key here.
To make sure the car doesn't get stolen, you don't leave the key here.
- 07 This car is old. It is probably not very valuable.
This car is old. It is probably very valuable.
This car is new. For a new car, it is not very expensive.
This car is new. It is very expensive.
- 08 A large truck can't fit through here.
Only a sport utility vehicle can get across here.
Only a small car can manage to park here.
Only a van can hold all of this.
- 09 Someone is about to get out of this car.
Someone is working on this car.
Somebody is about to unload this car.
Somebody is about to start this car.
- 10 The suitcase is in the trunk, and the purse is on the back seat. She is getting the suitcase.
The briefcase is on the front seat, and the purse is on the back seat. She is getting the briefcase.
Her sunglasses are in the glove compartment, and her purse is on the back seat. She is getting her sunglasses.
Her sunglasses are in the glove compartment, and her purse is on the back seat. She is getting her purse.

1-06 Driving

- 01 This car is probably parked in front of a house.
This car is probably parked on a city street.
These cars are probably parked in front of a shopping center.
These cars are probably parked underground.
- 02 You cannot drive on this road unless you pay a few dollars.
You cannot park in this space unless you are physically handicapped.
You have to turn left onto this street.
You have to be driving very fast to drive here.
- 03 These men are commuting to work in a car pool.
This man is driving his children to school.
This man is heading out on a vacation trip.
This man is driving to his construction job by himself.
- 04 It is eight in the morning. You could park here another time, but now you can't.
It is four in the afternoon. You could park here another time, but now you can't.
You can never park here.
You can always park here if you have money.
- 05 Now you can turn left, but you can't go straight.
Now you can turn left or go straight.
Now you can neither turn left nor go straight.
Now you can go straight or turn right, but you can't turn left.
- 06 She wants to buy the least expensive gasoline.
She will choose the nozzle on the left.
She is paying for her gasoline with a credit card.
She is paying for her gasoline with cash.
She is filling up her car with gasoline.
- 07 You can drive quite fast on this road.
You must drive fairly slowly on this road.
Normally, you can drive quite fast on this road, but right now you can hardly move at all.
Normally, you must drive fairly slowly on this road, but right now you can hardly drive at all.
- 08 This road is under construction. He must take a detour.
He is going to Washington, D.C. He has 200 miles to go.
He is going to Washington, D.C. He should take this exit.
He is going to Washington, D.C. He should remain in the left lane.
- 09 This car is in a parade.
This car is in a funeral procession.
This car is in a race.
This car was in an accident.
- 10 This is where you take your car when it needs gas.
This is where you take your car when it needs to be repaired.
If you drive your car too fast, this is what will happen.
This is where you take your car when you want to buy a new one.

1-07 Airplanes and Airports

- 01 The flight departs from Dublin.
The flight's destination is Ottawa.
This flight leaves at 2:35 p.m.
This flight arrives at 6:00 p.m.
- 02 The passengers are waiting to board this flight.
All of the passengers have boarded this flight.
No one is left at the gate.
This flight has been delayed. The plane is waiting on the runway to take off.
These will cause your flight to experience turbulence.
- 03 After arriving at the airport but before proceeding to your gate, you do this.
After checking in but before boarding the plane, you do this.
After boarding the plane but before taking off, you do this.
During your flight, you will probably get a chance to do this.
- 04 You will have to check this bag.
You will be able to keep this bag as a carry-on.
This might set off the metal detector, but you are allowed to take it on the plane.
This will set off the metal detector, and you are definitely not allowed to take it on the plane.
- 05 If you are flying first class, your seat will look like this.
If you are flying coach, your seat will look like this.
If you are flying first class, your meal will look like this.
If you are flying coach, your meal will look like this.
- 06 If you want to watch a movie during your flight, you can watch this.
If you want to read during your flight, you can read this.
If you want to listen to music during your flight, you can use this.
If you don't feel well during your flight, you can use this.
- 07 You press this to call the flight attendant.
You press this to turn your light on and off.
You adjust this to change the airflow above your seat.
This sign shows that you should keep your seat belt on.
- 08 On an airplane, you won't get this kind of entertainment.
On an airplane, you won't get this kind of food.
On an airplane, you won't be able to sleep this comfortably.
On an airplane, you won't have this much room to move around.
- 09 After you put your things away and sit down, but before the plane takes off, you do this.
After the plane takes off, but before it reaches a certain altitude, you can't use these.
After the plane lands, but before you get off, you do this.
After getting off the plane, but before leaving the airport, you go here.
- 10 John wants to rent a car. After he gets his luggage, he'll go here.
Sara wants to hail a taxi. After she gets her luggage, she'll go here.
Ann is being met by a chauffeur. After she gets her luggage, she'll see this.
Bill is being met by his family. After he gets his luggage, he'll see this.

1-08 Boats, Subways, and Trains

- 01 You might cross a river in this boat.
You might cross a large lake in this boat.
You wouldn't want to do anything on this boat.
You might cross the ocean in this boat.
- 02 He is fishing as a hobby.
He is fishing for a living.
This boat is carrying a commodity that will be sold.
This boat is carrying passengers who are on a cruise vacation.
- 03 Before getting on the subway, you buy a ticket here.
To get to the platform, you put your ticket here.
You ride down to the subway platform on this.
You find out how to get where you are going by using this.
- 04 I'm going from my hotel to the hospital. I should take the orange line.
I'm going from my hotel to the airport. I should take the orange line to the train station and then transfer to the blue line.
The subway is here. I'll wait for the doors to open.
There is no subway coming right now. I'll have to wait another few minutes.
- 05 He is not allowed to do that on the subway.
She is not allowed to do that on the subway.
She is not allowed to ride on the subway.
When he wants to ride on the subway, he takes the elevator rather than the escalator.
- 06 You can do this in the dining car of a train.
You can do this in the sleeper car of a train.
You can store these in the luggage rack of a train.
This is the kind of car you normally ride in.
- 07 The train to London is leaving from Platform 5.
The train to Ottawa is leaving at 6:00 p.m.
The train to Dublin is supposed to leave at 12:00 noon, but it is running late. Instead it will leave at 2:00 p.m.
On the way to Lisbon, the train will stop in Madrid.
- 08 Sometimes, you must buy your train ticket at the counter at the station.
Sometimes, you can buy your train ticket from a machine.
Sometimes, you can buy your ticket on the train from a conductor.
Some people buy their tickets ahead of time with a credit card.
- 09 This train does not carry any passengers.
This train is elevated.
This train is about to go through a tunnel.
This train probably doesn't run anymore.
- 10 This person will help you with your luggage at the train station.
This will tell you when your train is leaving.
This is where you wait for trains.
This is where you can ask for help or information.

1-09 Hotels

- 01 If you are driving along the highway, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are staying in a major city, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are a young person traveling around, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are going on a quiet vacation, you might stay in a place like this.
- 02 When you arrive at a nice hotel, you may use valet parking.
After you arrive at a hotel, you will want to check in here.
A bellhop may take your luggage up to your room for you.
You will need this to get into your room.
- 03 He is being shown to his hotel room.
He is unpacking his suitcase.
He is getting some ice.
He would prefer not to be disturbed right now.
- 04 John and Sara are staying in a hotel with their children. They need several rooms.
Deborah and Ted are staying by themselves. They just need one room.
She is staying in a hotel for several weeks. She would like to have a kitchenette in her room.
Scott and Ben are sharing a room, but they would like to sleep in separate beds.
- 05 They are going down to the hotel restaurant for dinner.
He is eating a continental breakfast at his hotel.
Mary and Bill are calling for room service.
She is making a small meal in her kitchenette.
- 06 You can take these home with you.
You can't take these home with you.
At most hotels, this meal is included in the price of the room.
At most hotels, this meal is not included in the price of the room.
- 07 Many hotels have these, in case you want to swim while you are staying there.
Most hotels have these, in case you want to watch your favorite show while you are staying there.
Some hotels have these, in case you want to work out while you are staying there.
Nearly all hotels have these, in case you need to call someone while you are staying there.
- 08 If your hotel gave you a key, your door will look like this.
If your hotel gave you a keycard, your door will look like this.
Before the housekeeper cleans your room, it may look like this.
After the housekeeper cleans your room, it should look like this.
- 09 For \$50 a night, you could probably stay in this hotel.
For \$250 a night, you could probably stay in this hotel.
You can sleep here for free, but it's probably not a good idea.
No matter how much money you pay, you'll never be able to sleep here.
- 10 He is calling to make a reservation. This way, he knows that the hotel will have a room for him when he arrives.
She forgot to make a reservation. She can't spend the night here, because there are no vacancies.
He has made a reservation. His room is ready for him.
She forgot to make a reservation. Luckily, there is a vacancy at this hotel.

1-10 Information, Directions, and Miscellaneous

- 01 How do you get to the museum?
Go to the corner, turn left, go about three blocks, and it's on your right.
How do you get to the restaurant?
Go to the corner, turn right, go about two blocks, and it's on your left.
How do you get to the train station?
You are too far away to walk. Go to the corner and hail a taxi.
This man does not understand the directions that he is being given.
- 02 When you are in a bus station, you might want to get a drink here.
When you are in a hotel, you might want to buy a gift or souvenir here.
If you are in an airport with a baby, you'll be glad for this.
If you are in an airport and you get injured, you may have to come here.
- 03 If you need to make a phone call from a hotel, you can use this.
If you need to make a phone call from a plane, you can use this.
If you need to make a phone call from a train station, you can use this.
If you need to make a phone call from the street, you can use this.
- 04 People who want to use the Internet need this.
People who want information or directions need this.
People who have a lot of luggage to carry need this.
Everybody needs this.
- 05 At the airport, this person will ask for your ticket and personal identification.
On an airplane, this person will ask which beverage you would like to drink.
At the airport, you will need this to get through immigration.
At the airport, this person may search you to make sure that you are not carrying any weapons.
- 06 He is running late because his plane has been delayed.
She is running late because her train is behind schedule.
He is running late because he is in heavy traffic.
She is running late because her hotel did not give her a wake-up call.
- 07 His car ran over a nail, and this happened.
He waited too long to put gasoline in his car, and this happened.
He can't call his wife because this happened.
He wasn't careful enough when driving, and this happened.
- 08 This is good weather for an airplane flight.
This is bad weather for an airplane flight.
Even if the weather is bad, this plane can fly.
It would be very dangerous to fly this plane in bad weather.
- 09 This man has trouble getting information. He doesn't speak the language.
This man can't use his cell phone. He is out of range.
This man can't buy a snack. He has lost his wallet.
This man can't figure out where he is. He can't read the map.
- 10 You would want to know some French if you were here.
You would want to know some Chinese if you were here.
You would want to know some Italian if you were here.
You would want to know some Arabic if you were here.

1-11 Review Lesson

- 01 These walkers have to stay together for safety.
These walkers have to stay together in order to sound and look good.
This walker likes to walk alone.
These walkers don't have to stay together, but they want to.
- 02 Bike riders can park their bikes almost anywhere.
Drivers cannot park their cars wherever they want.
These help you to see in the sun.
This helps you to stay dry in the rain.
- 03 You can't do this if you're riding a bike or driving.
You're not allowed to do this on most buses.
Robert has \$5.00. He's twenty miles from home.
He can only afford to get home on this.
John has \$50.00. He's five miles from home.
He can afford to get home in this.
- 04 She uses a cab to go grocery shopping.
She uses a cab to take her grandson to the zoo.
She takes a cab to school on days her mother can't drive her.
She is taking a cab because she thinks she's too dressed up for the subway.
- 05 This car needs to go to a gas station.
This car needs to have its oil changed.
The speed limit is 45 mph. This car needs to slow down.
The speed limit is 55 mph. This car needs to speed up.
- 06 She wants to buy the least expensive gasoline.
She will choose the nozzle on the left.
She is paying for her gasoline with a credit card.
She is paying for her gasoline with cash.
She is filling up her car with gasoline.
- 07 If you want to watch a movie during your flight, you can watch this.
If you want to read during your flight, you can read this.
If you want to listen to music during your flight, you can use this.
If you don't feel well during your flight, you can use this.
- 08 I'm going from my hotel to the hospital. I should take the orange line.
I'm going from my hotel to the airport. I should take the orange line to the train station and then transfer to the blue line.
The subway is here. I'll wait for the doors to open.
There is no subway coming right now. I'll have to wait another few minutes.
- 09 If you are driving along the highway, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are staying in a major city, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are a young person traveling around, you might spend the night in a place like this.
If you are going on a quiet vacation, you might stay in a place like this.
- 10 His car ran over a nail, and this happened.
He waited too long to put gasoline in his car, and this happened.
He can't call his wife because this happened.
He wasn't careful enough when driving, and this happened.

Video Lessons: Getting Home from the Airport

Scene 1 Arriving at the Airport

Ah, at last, we'd made it back home! But where was our ride? What time is it, Jim? Five thirty? We were three hours late! Maybe Bill had come and gone. Jim thought we should look for him at baggage claim. What was our flight number? Right. Eight twenty-six. Come on, Jim.

We found our bags but not our friend. This is ridiculous. Jim said we should go sit down and let Bill find us.

Scene 2 Getting the Phone

We sat there waiting. No Bill. Six thirty. We'd been there an hour. Then a phone rang. My cell phone! Where was it? In this bag? In that one? If I could just get these clothes out of the way... It's in here somewhere. I'm looking as fast as I can.

Wait. There! Hello! Hello? It wasn't my phone ringing, it was Jim's! He found it, he answered it, and... he was too late. That could have been Bill.

Next time I should pack a little lighter. I didn't need this red sweater... Wait! Our names were coming over the loudspeaker: "James and Katherine Harris, to the information desk, please." I shut my suitcase fast, then we grabbed all the bags and got out of there. This had to be Bill.

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

The information-desk guy was busy... with a puzzle. We asked him if we had a message. He said we did, and... back to the puzzle. I asked him if we could see the message. He showed it to us. Terrible news. Bill's car had broken down. He wasn't coming.

Continued

Scene 1 Arriving at the Airport

I was happy to be home. But Bill wasn't there. He was supposed to pick us up. The time? It was 5:30. Our flight was three hours late. "Hey," I said to Kate, "let's look for him at baggage claim." "Sure," said Kate. "But first check our flight number." Here it is: 826. Baggage Claim 7. Let's go.

At least our bags were there. But we still didn't see Bill. "Well," I said to Kate, "We can't find Bill, so let Bill find us."

Scene 2 Getting the Phone

We had waited a long time for Bill to find us. It was 6:30. Then Kate's cell phone rang. She wanted to answer it; she just couldn't remember where it was. "Katherine," I said, "Can't you keep your phone in your purse?" I wished she would hurry. This was definitely Bill.

Finally, she pulled the phone from somewhere. Who was it? Oh. It wasn't Kate's phone. Then it had to be mine! OK. OK. I knew exactly where mine was. Here we are. Hello? Oh, oh well. It... it probably wasn't Bill.

I helped Kate pick up her clothes. There were clothes there I hadn't even seen before. Then a page came over the intercom: "James and Katherine Harris to the information desk, please." That was us! Finally, we got all of our stuff together and headed for the information desk. This had to be Bill.

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

The man at the information desk looked busy, but we had to interrupt him. "A message?" he said. "Oh, yes." But he didn't give it to us. Kate asked him for it again. All right, there it was: "Bill can't make it. Trouble with his car."

Continued

Scene 1 Arriving at the Airport

Kate: Oh, it's so good to be home!
Jim: Oh, it sure is.
Kate: Bill's not here to pick us up.
Jim: No, I don't see him.
Kate: What time is it, Jim?
Jim: Five thirty.
Kate: Five thirty? We're three hours late! Maybe he's been here and left.
Jim: Hey. Let's look for him at baggage claim.
Kate: Sure. But first check our flight number.
Jim: Oh, right. Here it is: 826. Baggage Claim 7. Let's go.

Kate: Our luggage is all here, but I don't see Bill.
Jim: Well, we can't find Bill, so let Bill find us.

Scene 2 Getting the Phone

Kate: He hasn't found us yet. What time is it?
Jim: It's around 6:30.
Kate: Where could he be? Oh! My cell phone.
Jim: Get it out of your purse, Honey.
Kate: Maybe in this bag.
Jim: Katherine, can't you keep your phone in your purse?

Kate: It's in here somewhere. I'm looking as fast as I can. Wait. Oh. Here it is! Hello. Hello? What? It's your phone! Do you know where it is?
Jim: Yes, I know exactly where it is. Hello... Oh. Too late.

Kate: Do you think that was Bill calling?
Jim: Who knows?... Listen!
Kate: We're being paged. James and Katherine Harris to the information desk.
Jim: All right. I'll just close these up. I guess between us, we have everything. This has got to be Bill.

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

Kate: Excuse me.
Information-desk Guy: Hello!
Kate: Do you have a message for Katherine and James Harris?
Information-desk Guy: Oh, yes.
Kate: Can we see the message?

Continued

Scene 1 Arriving at the Airport

Kate and Jim are back from their honeymoon. But they've arrived at the airport three hours late. It's already 5:30. And their friend Bill isn't there to take them home. They decide to look for him at the baggage claim area. That's right—check the flight number. It won't help you to go to the wrong baggage claim.

Good. All the luggage is there. But Bill isn't. They're going to sit down and see if he turns up. You never know.

Scene 2 Getting the Phone

They've been waiting a long time for Bill to show up. It's 6:30 now. Wait! He's calling them. I'm sure it's Bill. But where's the phone? Kate's throwing her things everywhere trying to find it. Jim is complaining that she ought to know where her phone is.

There it is. Is it Bill? No? Oh, it's Jim's phone that's ringing! Jim shows Kate the proper way to find a ringing phone. But he's too late. One of them should get a phone with a different ring.

I can't believe Kate took all those clothes to Hawaii... What's that? Bill must still be trying to reach them. Now they're being paged. They have to go to the information desk. I hope this isn't bad news.

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

The man at the information desk is working on a crossword puzzle. He has their message, but he's more interested in the puzzle. I wonder how dependable his information is. He wrote the message on his newspaper. Doesn't the airport have enough notepads? Bad news. Bill isn't coming. His car has broken down. *Continued*

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

Continued

“Well, don’t worry,” I told Jim. “We can rent a car.”
 “Can we?” Jim asked the information-desk guy. “Oh, yes,” he said, and back to the puzzle. But where? “Go down there,” he said, “and turn left.” And it’s open? Who knows? Never mind. We’ll find out for ourselves.

Scene 4 Renting a Car

I rang the bell and waited for... Information-desk Guy to show up. What? But... he... We told him we wanted to rent a car. Could he help us? Yes, he could. He would just need to see our driver’s licenses, plus a credit card.

I told him that I didn’t expect to pay very much for this car. After all, we only wanted it for a day. We didn’t want insurance or prepaid gas, either.

Everything was going fine until he asked us what kind of car we were looking for. “The cheap kind,” I said. “A sports car,” Jim said. No. Nothing fancy. But he liked that flashy red car. Look at that nice economy car! A pickup truck? Jim! Obviously, we need an economy car. Not a luxury car! We’re just trying to get home! And we don’t need a sports utility vehicle.

Continued

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

Continued

We didn’t know what to do next. Then Kate suggested that we could rent a car. The information-desk guy said yes, there was a rental-car agency at the airport. He said it was down the hall and to the left. We asked if it was open, but he didn’t know. Some information desk!

Scene 4 Renting a Car

When we got to the rental-car counter, no one was there. No, wait, there was... Information-desk Guy. He’s versatile. And cheerful. Renting us a car would be no problem at all, he said. He asked to see our driver’s licenses, since we were both going to drive, and he took my credit card as well.

Kate wanted to know what the car would cost. That depended. We said we wanted the car for just one day, with no insurance or prepaid gas. Was there anything else?

Oh, what kind of car did we have in mind? I said it might be fun to try a sports car, but Kate disagreed rather strongly. Hey, this was a great one! No? Kate wanted an economy car. How about a pickup truck? No? An economy car. Maybe a luxury car. But Kate wasn’t going to change her mind. How about an SUV? Yeah, just like that one.

Continued

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

Continued

Jim: Can we have it?

Information-desk Guy: Sure. It's right here, on the back.

Kate: Bill can't make it. Trouble with his car... Oh, no. What are we going to do?

Jim: I don't know.

Kate: What if we rented a car?

Jim: Can we rent a car?

Information-desk Guy: Hmm? Oh, yes.

Jim: Great.

Kate: Where is the rental-car agency?

Information-desk Guy: Go down there and turn left.

Kate: And it's open?

Jim: He doesn't know. Let's go.

Scene 4 Renting a Car

Kate: Well, here's the counter. I wonder if they're open?

Information-desk Guy: Can I help you?

Jim: Whoa! But he... Isn't he the same guy that was just... Hmm... We would like to rent a car.

Information-desk Guy: How many of you are driving?

Kate: Well, both of us.

Information-desk Guy: OK. I'll need to see your driver's licenses and a credit card.

Kate: Here's mine.

Jim: And mine.

Information-desk Guy: All right.

Kate: I don't want to pay a lot.

Information-desk Guy: How long will you need the car?

Jim: One day.

Information-desk Guy: And how about insurance? Prepaid gas?

Jim: Neither.

Information-desk Guy: Depending on the car you choose, you'll be paying between 40 and 50 dollars.

Information-desk Guy: What kind of a car would you like?

Kate: The cheap kind.

Jim: A sports car.

Kate: No, no.

Information-desk Guy: Like that?

Jim: Yeah.

Kate: We need an economy car.

Information-desk Guy: We have one of those.

Jim: A pickup truck!

Continued

Scene 3 At the Information Desk

Continued

Jim and Kate decide to rent a car of their own.

Information-desk Man gives them directions to the rental agency. Is it open? He has no more information.

Scene 4 Renting a Car

When Jim and Kate get to the rental-car counter, no one is there. Wait a minute, who's this? You'd think an airport would have enough staff. It starts out well. Information-desk Guy knows which questions to ask. How many are driving? Can he see their licenses? And a credit card?

They talk about what the car will cost. Car-rental Guy says it depends on how many days they'll have the car, and whether they want insurance and prepaid gas.

He asks what kind of car they want, and they disagree. Kate is concerned about price. Jim would love to rent an expensive car. While it's true that price isn't everything, Jim needs to realize that they're only driving this car home. Car-rental Guy just keeps showing them picture after picture, and they can't agree on a thing.

Continued

Scene 4 Renting a Car

Continued

I decided we needed to get out of there. Let's go see what they actually have. Information-desk Guy was happy to show us. In the parking lot, we found out what was available: a van. Forget it! I'd rather push a shopping cart home than drive that. But Information-desk Guy thought it was very nice.

Scene 5 Trying the Bus

Back at the information desk, guess who rushed up to help us? I guess it was a small airport. Can we catch a bus around here? Yes? Well, where? Go outside and to the right. OK.

We counted our change while we waited. You needed to have the exact fare. OK. Here comes the bus. Great! We'll be home soon.

As soon as the driver opened the door, we asked him if he went near Water Street. He was afraid not. But surely another bus would be coming along soon? No, not for an hour. Maybe we could transfer to the right bus? No again. The bus wasn't going to work. "What will we do?" I asked Jim. How could we get this trip to end?

Scene 4 Renting a Car

Continued

"Could we just see what's in the parking lot?" Kate asked. "Absolutely," he said. "Right this way." "Here's something nice and roomy," said the rental-car guy. It was a van. The kind they use to deliver carpets. That wouldn't be any fun at all.

Scene 5 Trying the Bus

We went back to the information desk wondering what to do. Information-desk/Car-rental Guy was right behind us. We wondered if he had also flown our plane. When we asked about a bus stop, he told us where we could find one: outside and to the right.

The biggest problem now was change for the bus fare. I gave mine to Kate; she counted it. There was the bus now. This was better than driving that van. Great! We'll be home in 45 minutes. Or maybe not.

We found out from the driver that the bus didn't go near Water Street, that another bus wouldn't come for an hour, and that we couldn't even transfer from this bus to another one. There seemed to be no way out of this airport. Kate wanted to know what we should do now. I don't know. Roller skates?

Scene 4 Renting a Car*Continued*

Information-desk Guy: Sure.
Kate: Economy car!
Information-desk Guy: Consider this.
Jim: How about a luxury car? Oh, look at that!
Kate: Economy!
Jim: I've got it! An SUV!
Information-desk Guy: Look at this one.

Kate: Could we just see what's in the parking lot?
Information-desk Guy: Absolutely. Right this way...
Here's what we have today.
Jim: That's not a sports car.
Kate: It's not an economy car.
Information-desk Guy: But it's really, really big. One of our biggest. So when would you... Hmm? Oh.

Scene 5 Trying the Bus

Kate: Can anyone in this airport help us? Can... Oh, no. Can we catch a bus around here?
Information-desk Guy: Yes.
Jim: Where's the bus stop?
Information-desk Guy: Go out and then turn to the right.
Jim: To the right. OK.
Kate: Thank you.

Jim: Let's see, a dollar twenty... How much is the fare?
Kate: A dollar fifty.
Jim: Oh. Here it comes.

Kate: I think we have the right fare now.
Jim: We'll be home soon.
Kate: Yeah, isn't that wonderful? Hello! Does this bus go near Water Street?
Driver: I'm afraid not.
Jim: Is there another bus that goes there?
Driver: Yeah. In an hour.
Kate: An hour? How about a transfer?
Jim: Yes, can we transfer from this bus to...?
Driver: Sorry. Not a chance.
Jim: OK.
Kate: Thanks... Jim, what'll we do?
Jim: Well, I'm running out of ideas.

Scene 4 Renting a Car*Continued*

Oh, good. They've agreed to go out to the lot and see what's actually there. They see... a van. Kate doesn't want it because it's not cheap, and Jim doesn't want it because it's a van. Van-rental Guy doesn't see the problem.

Scene 5 Trying the Bus

Everybody goes back to the information desk. Information-desk Guy goes back to his newspaper. This is not progress. Jim and Kate are talking about catching a bus. Where can they do that? The bus stop is outside and to the right.

They need to have exact change for the bus fare. Kate's working on that. But there are other things to think about as well. Do they know the bus routes? Is this the right bus?

Let's see what the bus driver says. Uh-oh. Kate and Jim are not getting the answers they want. This bus isn't going near their apartment. The one that does won't come for an hour. And they can't transfer. This bus is no help at all. It seems impossible for Kate and Jim to get home from this airport.

Scene 6 Calling a Cab

What now? I didn't know what to do. But then Jim had an idea. A taxi! He raised his arm, but no one stopped. I guess you can't hail a cab when there aren't any.

I knew where my cell phone was, though, and I pulled it out. I would just call the cab company... Hello? We'd like a cab to Water Street... Here in five minutes? Great! Thanks. I told Jim that help was on the way.

Could we finally be going home? Sure enough, the cab pulled up, and the driver got out to get our bags. I should have known who it would be. Was it too late for that shopping cart?

Scene 6 Calling a Cab

We were both pretty frustrated. What else was there? Well, what about... a taxi? I tried to hail one, but nothing much happened. One reason might have been that there weren't any taxis.

Then Kate remembered her phone. It was in her purse this time. In no time, she was calling for a taxi to pick us up. "Tell them what we look like," I said. I didn't want to take any chances. How long till someone picks us up? Kate said five minutes.

Look, here comes our taxi. Our troubles are finally over... You have got to be kidding. Was it too late for that van?

Scene 6 Calling a Cab

Kate: I was so sure we could catch a bus. What now?

Jim: Oh! I'll hail a taxi.

Kate: Great idea! But no cabs are stopping.

Jim: Actually, there are no cabs.

Kate: My phone! I'll call the cab company.

Jim: Great idea.

Information-desk Guy: Hello.

Kate: Hello? We'd like a cab to Water Street.

We're at the airport. You'll be here in five minutes?

Jim: Great!

Kate: It won't be long.

Jim: Look, here comes our taxi. It got here in five minutes, just like he said it would. Our troubles are finally over.

Information-desk Guy: Hey! My friends!

Scene 6 Calling a Cab

Kate and Jim are almost out of ideas. Could they take a cab home? Jim decides to try hailing one in front of the terminal. That doesn't work. There aren't any taxis.

Kate thinks of calling the cab company on her phone. That idea turns out to be a good one. Cab-company Man answers the phone promptly. Kate asks him if a cab can take them from the airport to Water Street. He says their cab will be there in five minutes. Everything should be fine now... I hope.

The taxi is coming! Now they won't have to worry about finding Bill or renting a car or catching a bus. They won't have to worry about... a thing.

Questions

Scene 1 – Arriving at the Airport

1. What are the names of the couple?
 - a) Jim and Jean
 - b) John and Katherine
 - c) Jim and Kate
 - d) James and Nora
2. How does Jim feel about being home?
 - a) happy
 - b) sad
 - c) bored
 - d) surprised
3. Where are Jim and Kate?
 - a) at their friend's house
 - b) on the airplane
 - c) at their apartment
 - d) at the airport
4. Whom are Jim and Kate expecting to meet?
 - a) their friend Bill
 - b) someone who works at the airport
 - c) someone who was on their plane
 - d) Bill's friend
5. What was Bill going to do?
 - a) give them directions
 - b) drive them home
 - c) find their bags
 - d) get on the plane
6. Whose friend is Bill?
 - a) He is a friend of both Jim and Kate.
 - b) He is neither Kate's friend nor Jim's friend.
 - c) He is Jim's friend.
 - d) He is Kate's friend.
7. Where have Jim and Kate been?
 - a) on a business trip
 - b) on a visit to their relatives
 - c) at Bill's house
 - d) on their honeymoon
8. Where do Kate and Jim say they are?
 - a) on the plane
 - b) at the airport
 - c) home
 - d) at the baggage claim area
9. How do Jim and Kate find out what time it is?
 - a) Jim asks Kate.
 - b) Kate asks Jim.
 - c) They ask someone.
 - d) They look at the clock on the wall.
10. When did their plane arrive at the airport?
 - a) 2:30
 - b) 8:26
 - c) 8:30
 - d) 5:30
11. When would their plane have arrived if it hadn't been late?
 - a) 5:30
 - b) 2:30
 - c) 8:30
 - d) 4:30
12. What does Kate think might have happened to Bill?
 - a) He came to pick them up but left because they were late.
 - b) He forgot to pick them up.
 - c) He got lost on the way.
 - d) He is on a later flight.
13. Where do Jim and Kate decide to look for Bill?
 - a) at the information desk
 - b) at the bus stop
 - c) at baggage claim
 - d) at the car-rental desk
14. What does "826" mean to Jim and Kate?
 - a) It's part of the airport's address.
 - b) It's their flight number.
 - c) It's part of Bill's phone number.
 - d) It's the time.
15. What do Jim and Kate need to know before they can find out the baggage claim number?
 - a) what their bags look like
 - b) their time of arrival
 - c) Bill's phone number
 - d) their flight number
16. Which baggage claim area do they go to?
 - a) the first one
 - b) the one for late arrivals
 - c) the one where Bill is
 - d) seven
17. What do Jim and Kate find at baggage claim?
 - a) some of the bags they checked
 - b) Bill's bags
 - c) all the bags they checked
 - d) the wrong bags
18. Which of the following does Jim say?
 - a) "Sure. But first check our flight number."
 - b) "Hey. Let's look for him at baggage claim."
 - c) "Maybe Bill has come and gone."
 - d) "What time is it?"

19. Who says, "Baggage Claim 7. Let's go"?
 - a) Bill
 - b) Jim
 - c) Kate
 - d) the narrator
20. Which of these sentences does not refer to Bill?
 - a) Let's look for him at baggage claim.
 - b) Maybe he's been here and left.
 - c) He was supposed to pick us up.
 - d) It won't help you to go to the wrong baggage claim.

Scene 2 – Getting the Phone

1. What are Jim and Kate doing at the beginning of this scene?
 - a) waiting for Bill to find them
 - b) waiting for Bill's plane
 - c) waiting for a cab
 - d) waiting for Bill to call
2. What time is it?
 - a) five thirty
 - b) four thirty
 - c) six thirty
 - d) seven thirty
3. How long have Jim and Kate been waiting?
 - a) four hours
 - b) one hour
 - c) six hours and thirty minutes
 - d) three hours
4. Why does Kate open all of her bags?
 - a) She is looking for her purse.
 - b) She wants to find her phone to call Bill.
 - c) She wants to answer her cell phone.
 - d) She is looking for her red sweater.
5. Where does Jim think Kate should keep her cell phone?
 - a) with her clothes
 - b) in one of her bags
 - c) with his things
 - d) in her purse
6. While Kate is looking for her phone, what is Jim not thinking?
 - a) that it's his phone that is ringing
 - b) that Kate needs to hurry
 - c) that Kate can't remember where her phone is
 - d) that Bill is calling them
7. What does Kate learn when she answers her phone?
 - a) that Bill is on his way
 - b) that Bill can't make it
 - c) that Bill hung up before she could turn on her phone
 - d) that it's actually Jim's phone that is ringing
8. What happens when Jim answers his phone?
 - a) He doesn't know how to use his phone.
 - b) It was a wrong number.
 - c) He's too late to talk to the caller.
 - d) Bill says he'll call back.
9. Why didn't Jim answer his phone sooner?
 - a) He didn't know where it was.
 - b) He thought it was Kate's phone that was ringing.
 - c) He didn't think it was Bill.
 - d) He thought Kate was going to answer his phone.
10. Who was calling?
 - a) Jim and Kate don't know, but they think it may have been Bill.
 - b) Kate was calling Jim to find out where his cell phone was.
 - c) Jim and Kate are sure that it was Bill.
 - d) Jim and Kate are sure that it wasn't Bill.
11. What do Jim and Kate do after the phone call?
 - a) Jim and Kate decide that it must have been Bill calling.
 - b) Jim helps Kate pick up her clothes.
 - c) They talk about Kate's clothes.
 - d) They look for Kate's sweater.
12. What does Kate realize when she is packing up her clothes?
 - a) She should pack fewer things next time.
 - b) She should keep her phone in her purse.
 - c) She didn't bring enough clothes on the trip.
 - d) She doesn't like her clothes.
13. What does Kate think about her red sweater?
 - a) She doesn't think Jim likes it.
 - b) She shouldn't have brought it.
 - c) She wants to wear it.
 - d) She wants to get rid of it.
14. Where were Jim and Kate traveling from?
 - a) a place that is usually cold
 - b) a place that Bill could drive to
 - c) a place where most people do not speak English
 - d) a place that has a lot of beaches

15. Where do Jim and Kate not hear their names?
 - a) on the loudspeaker
 - b) over the intercom
 - c) in a phone call
 - d) in a page
16. What are Jim and Kate called over the loudspeaker?
 - a) James and Kate Harris
 - b) Jim and Kate Harris
 - c) Katherine and James Harris
 - d) James and Katherine Harris
17. A loudspeaker is part of
 - a) a cell phone
 - b) the yellow pages
 - c) an intercom system
 - d) an airplane
18. Where does the voice on the loudspeaker tell them to go?
 - a) to the information desk
 - b) to the flight gate
 - c) to the baggage claim
 - d) to meet Bill
19. What do Jim and Kate take with them to the information desk?
 - a) everything but Kate's cell phone
 - b) all of their stuff
 - c) everything but Kate's red sweater
 - d) some of their bags
20. What do Jim and Katherine expect at the information desk?
 - a) a message from Bill
 - b) another cell phone call
 - c) bad news
 - d) their luggage
3. Kate asks the information-desk guy about
 - a) his newspaper
 - b) Bill
 - c) the crossword puzzle
 - d) a message
4. What do Jim and Kate expect the man to do after he tells them that they have a message?
 - a) call Bill for them
 - b) go back to his puzzle
 - c) give them the message
 - d) announce the message over the loudspeaker
5. What does the information-desk guy do instead?
 - a) He tells them to come back later.
 - b) He goes back to his puzzle.
 - c) He asks them if they want to see the message.
 - d) He looks for the message.
6. Where did Information-desk Guy write the message?
 - a) on a piece of paper
 - b) on the newspaper
 - c) on a notepad
 - d) He didn't write it down.
7. What does the message say?
 - a) It says that Bill can't make it because his car has broken down.
 - b) It says that Bill can't make it because he got lost on the way to the airport.
 - c) It says that Bill is coming to pick them up and will be there soon.
 - d) It says that Bill can't make it because he has to go somewhere else instead.
8. How did the information-desk guy get the message?
 - a) Bill called him.
 - b) Someone gave it to him.
 - c) He saw it in the newspaper.
 - d) We don't know.

Scene 3 – At the Information Desk

1. How does Kate refer to the man who is standing behind the desk?
 - a) the guy with the information
 - b) the information-desk guy
 - c) Information-desk Man
 - d) the man at the information desk
2. What is the information-desk guy doing when Jim and Kate arrive?
 - a) giving information to someone
 - b) writing a message
 - c) reading the newspaper
 - d) working on a crossword puzzle
9. When Jim finds out that Bill isn't coming, what does he think they should do?
 - a) He thinks they should rent a car.
 - b) He thinks they should call Bill back.
 - c) He doesn't know what to do.
 - d) He thinks Kate should decide.
10. What is Kate's idea when she finds out that Bill isn't coming?
 - a) She doesn't have any ideas.
 - b) They should rent a car.
 - c) They should get more information about Bill.
 - d) They should find Bill themselves.

11. Jim asks the information-desk guy
 - a) if the car-rental agency is open
 - b) what happened to Bill
 - c) if they can rent a car
 - d) where the car-rental agency is
12. What do Jim and Kate learn about the car-rental agency?
 - a) It is down the hall and to the left.
 - b) It is open right now.
 - c) It is closed right now.
 - d) It will rent them a car only if they have ID.
13. What do Jim and Kate not learn about the car-rental agency?
 - a) where it is
 - b) whether there is one in the airport
 - c) whether it is open
 - d) how to get there from the information desk
14. What does Kate think she and Jim should find out for themselves?
 - a) whether Bill is OK
 - b) whether the car-rental agency is open
 - c) whether they can catch a cab
 - d) whether there is a car-rental agency in the airport
15. Who asks the most questions in this scene?
 - a) Information-desk Guy
 - b) Jim
 - c) Kate
 - d) Bill
16. Which of these answers does not come from Information-desk Guy?
 - a) "I don't know."
 - b) "A message?"
 - c) "Oh, yes."
 - d) "Go down there and turn left."
17. The information-desk guy would best be described as
 - a) rude
 - b) helpful
 - c) well-informed
 - d) unhelpful
18. Which of the following sentences is not about the information-desk guy?
 - a) But he didn't give it to us.
 - b) He wasn't coming.
 - c) He has no more information.
 - d) He doesn't know.

19. Where does Information-desk Guy go after Jim and Kate leave?
 - a) He leaves the airport.
 - b) He goes looking for a newspaper.
 - c) He goes to call Bill.
 - d) He doesn't say where he's going.
20. What does the narrator think the airport should have more of?
 - a) notepads
 - b) information-desk guys
 - c) newspapers
 - d) intercoms

Scene 4 – Renting a Car

1. When Kate and Jim first get to the car-rental counter, who is there?
 - a) Bill
 - b) nobody
 - c) Information-desk Guy
 - d) Car-rental Guy
2. What does Kate do at the car-rental counter?
 - a) She asks Jim for his credit card.
 - b) She asks for someone to help them.
 - c) She asks if the agency is open.
 - d) She waits for someone to arrive.
3. Who arrives to serve them?
 - a) no one
 - b) Bill
 - c) Information-desk Guy
 - d) someone they don't know
4. What does Car-rental Guy need to see before he can rent Jim and Kate a car?
 - a) either their driver's licenses or a credit card
 - b) their driver's licenses and a credit card
 - c) Jim's driver's license and credit card
 - d) their airplane tickets
5. Why does Car-rental Guy need to see both of their driver's licenses?
 - a) Both Jim and Kate will be driving the car.
 - b) Jim and Kate are married.
 - c) Jim and Kate are both adults.
 - d) Kate doesn't have a credit card.
6. How long do Jim and Kate want to have the car?
 - a) for two days
 - b) for one day
 - c) for an hour or so
 - d) They don't say.

7. Which of the following things do Jim and Kate want to do?
 - a) buy insurance
 - b) drive a rented car home
 - c) drive a rented car to the airport
 - d) buy prepaid gas
 8. What do Jim and Kate disagree about?
 - a) for how long to rent the car
 - b) whether they should rent a car or wait longer for Bill
 - c) who should drive
 - d) what kind of car to rent
 9. Which kind of car does Kate want?
 - a) a luxury car
 - b) an economy car
 - c) a sports car
 - d) an SUV
 10. How much does Car-rental Guy say the car is going to cost?
 - a) forty to fifty dollars
 - b) at least fifty dollars
 - c) He doesn't say.
 - d) a dollar per mile
 11. What does the price not depend on?
 - a) whether Jim and Kate want insurance
 - b) for how long Jim and Kate want the car
 - c) whether Jim or Kate is driving
 - d) the kind of car Jim and Kate want to rent
 12. The cars Jim is interested in are all
 - a) expensive
 - b) small
 - c) large
 - d) cheap
 13. What is Jim probably not thinking about when he is looking at the different kinds of cars?
 - a) The car they rent doesn't have to be a sports car.
 - b) Kate and he are driving just a few miles to get home.
 - c) An economy car would be a boring choice.
 - d) A sports car would be fun to drive.
 14. What do neither Jim nor Kate talk about renting?
 - a) an economy car
 - b) a pickup truck
 - c) a bus
 - d) a sports car
 15. Where do Jim and Kate go to see the rental cars?
 - a) a parking garage
 - b) the information desk
 - c) baggage claim
 - d) the parking lot
 16. What is actually available?
 - a) a car that is not big enough
 - b) a van
 - c) a car that is too big
 - d) a truck
 17. Who liked the van?
 - a) Car-rental Guy
 - b) Kate and Jim but not Car-rental Guy
 - c) Jim but not Kate
 - d) Kate but not Jim
 18. What does Car-rental Guy like about the van?
 - a) It looks like a shopping cart.
 - b) It is very inexpensive to rent.
 - c) It has a lot of room.
 - d) It is fun to drive.
 19. Why doesn't Jim want to rent the van?
 - a) He thinks it has too much room.
 - b) He doesn't think it would be any fun to drive.
 - c) He doesn't have any carpets to deliver.
 - d) He thinks it would be too expensive.
 20. Why doesn't Kate want to rent the van?
 - a) She thinks it would be too expensive.
 - b) She doesn't like the color.
 - c) She doesn't have a shopping cart.
 - d) She doesn't think it would be any fun to drive.
- Scene 5 – Trying the Bus**
1. Where do Jim and Kate go from the parking lot?
 - a) back to baggage claim
 - b) back to the information desk
 - c) to the bus stop
 - d) back to the car-rental desk
 2. As they go back to the information desk, what are Jim and Kate thinking?
 - a) that they should have rented the van
 - b) that they want to talk to Information-desk Guy
 - c) that they don't know what to do
 - d) that they don't know where Information-desk Guy is

3. What does Information-desk Guy do when he gets to the desk?
 - a) He offers to show Kate and Jim more cars.
 - b) He asks Kate and Jim if he can help them.
 - c) He goes back to his crossword puzzle.
 - d) He gives Kate and Jim another message.
4. What is the next way that Jim and Kate try to get home?
 - a) in a cab
 - b) on a bus
 - c) on a plane
 - d) in a car
5. Kate asks Information-desk Guy
 - a) what they should do next
 - b) whether he has finished his puzzle
 - c) whether he flew their plane
 - d) whether they can catch a bus at the airport
6. Which of the following is not true about Information-desk Guy?
 - a) If you want to get information from him, you usually have to ask him more than one question.
 - b) He does several different jobs around the airport.
 - c) He drives a bus.
 - d) He enjoys doing crossword puzzles.
7. Where should Kate and Jim go to catch a bus?
 - a) to the bus stop
 - b) to Water Street
 - c) to the parking lot
 - d) to another airport
8. Where does Information-desk Guy tell Jim and Kate they will find the bus stop?
 - a) down the hall on the right
 - b) outside and to the right
 - c) outside and straight ahead
 - d) by the baggage claim area
9. What does Jim say about Information-desk Guy in this scene?
 - a) that he flew their plane
 - b) that he was also Car-rental Man
 - c) that he shouldn't be doing a crossword puzzle
 - d) that he followed Kate and him to the information desk
10. What do Jim and Kate do while they are waiting for a bus?
 - a) They look at the bus schedule.
 - b) They get out money for the bus fare.
 - c) They wonder when the next bus will be coming.
 - d) They make sure they have all their luggage.
11. Why are Jim and Kate so careful when counting their money?
 - a) They need something to do.
 - b) They aren't sure they have enough money.
 - c) They want to see who has more money.
 - d) They need the exact change to pay their bus fare.
12. Jim says riding the bus is better than
 - a) driving an economy car
 - b) driving the van
 - c) taking a cab
 - d) riding with Bill
13. How long does Jim think it will take to get home on the bus?
 - a) four or five minutes
 - b) a long time
 - c) forty-five minutes
 - d) one hour
14. How much does Kate say the bus fare is?
 - a) \$1.50
 - b) \$1.20
 - c) 50 cents
 - d) She doesn't know.
15. Why does Kate ask the driver about Water Street?
 - a) Most buses go to Water Street.
 - b) Jim and Kate live on Water Street.
 - c) She doesn't want to wait an hour.
 - d) She knows she can transfer to another bus on Water Street.
16. Why don't Jim and Kate get on the bus?
 - a) The bus takes an hour to get to Water Street.
 - b) They don't have enough money.
 - c) The bus driver doesn't answer their questions.
 - d) It doesn't go near Water Street.
17. How long would they have to wait for a bus that goes to Water Street?
 - a) 45 minutes
 - b) one hour
 - c) two hours
 - d) There is no bus that goes to Water Street
18. What else do Jim and Kate ask the bus driver?
 - a) whether there is enough room on the bus for their luggage
 - b) whether they have enough money
 - c) whether they can transfer from this bus to another bus
 - d) where this bus is going

19. Why can't Jim and Kate transfer to Water Street?
 - a) No buses go near Water Street.
 - b) Transfers cost more money.
 - c) The bus driver doesn't say.
 - d) There are no transfers from any bus.
20. What is Kate thinking at the end of the scene?
 - a) that the bus driver did not do a good job
 - b) that she wants the trip to end
 - c) that they should get some roller skates
 - d) that they should wait for the next bus

Scene 6 – Calling a Cab

1. How do Jim and Kate feel when they realize they can't catch a bus?
 - a) angry
 - b) happy
 - c) confident
 - d) frustrated
2. What is the next thing Jim and Kate try in order to get home?
 - a) calling Bill
 - b) waiting for another bus
 - c) getting a taxi
 - d) renting a car
3. Whose idea is it to take a taxi home?
 - a) Information-desk Guy's
 - b) the bus driver's
 - c) Kate's
 - d) Jim's
4. How does Jim try to get a taxi?
 - a) He asks Information-desk Guy to call a cab for him.
 - b) He raises his arm to hail one.
 - c) He calls for one on his phone.
 - d) He walks over to the taxi stand.
5. Why can't Jim hail a cab?
 - a) He doesn't know how to hail a cab.
 - b) Other people have gotten all the taxicabs.
 - c) The cab drivers don't see him.
 - d) There aren't any cabs there.
6. What does Kate do next?
 - a) She suggests that they try to hail a cab somewhere else.
 - b) She decides to ask for more information about cabs.
 - c) She calls the cab company on her cell phone.
 - d) She tries to hail a cab herself.
7. Where is Kate's phone?
 - a) in her purse
 - b) in her suitcase
 - c) in her pocket
 - d) Jim is holding it for her.
8. How does Kate know the number of the cab company?
 - a) She has written it on a piece of paper.
 - b) She has programmed it into her cell phone.
 - c) Jim tells her what the number is.
 - d) We don't know.
9. While Kate is on the phone, what does Jim tell her to do?
 - a) ask how much a cab will cost
 - b) tell the cab company they have luggage
 - c) tell the cab company where to pick them up
 - d) tell the cab company what they look like
10. What does Kate tell the cab company?
 - a) how much luggage she and Jim have
 - b) where they want to go
 - c) how much she will pay for a cab
 - d) what she and Jim look like
11. Who answers Kate's phone call?
 - a) someone in a taxi cab
 - b) no one
 - c) Cab-company Man
 - d) someone Jim and Kate don't know
12. When will the cab pick them up?
 - a) in 45 minutes
 - b) in an hour
 - c) at 7:30
 - d) in five minutes
13. Cab-company Man
 - a) is the same person as Information-desk Guy
 - b) says he cannot help Kate and Jim
 - c) does not answer the phone
 - d) tells Kate and Jim where to find a taxicab
14. When Kate tells Jim that help is on the way, she is referring to
 - a) the airport
 - b) the taxi
 - c) her phone
 - d) Water Street

15. When Jim sees the cab, he thinks
- a) their troubles are over
 - b) it is late
 - c) Bill is coming
 - d) they should catch a bus instead
16. Why does the driver get out of the cab?
- a) to introduce himself to Jim and Kate
 - b) to get Jim and Kate's bags
 - c) to open the doors for Jim and Kate
 - d) to make sure that Jim and Kate are the right passengers
17. When Jim and Kate recognize the driver, they are
- a) angry
 - b) amused
 - c) surprised
 - d) happy
18. What does Jim wish for when he sees the driver?
- a) a shopping cart
 - b) the van
 - c) the bus
 - d) their friend Bill
19. Who says, "Hey! My friends!"?
- a) Kate
 - b) Jim
 - c) Information-desk/Car-rental/Cab-company Guy
 - d) the bus driver
20. What do Jim and Kate probably not do after the video ends?
- a) leave the airport
 - b) go home
 - c) get in the taxi
 - d) spend the night in the airport

Narrative Lesson 3-01

Kate's Diary

Sunday, June 16th

I had asked Jim to call the airline from our hotel and reconfirm our flight home from Hawaii, but he didn't do it. He told me later that he hadn't thought it was necessary. After all, we had reservations, didn't we? Now he knows. Everything about our flight was changed—the airline, the terminal, even the departure time. If he had called, we would have known. As it was, we had to rush to get to the plane on time. Fortunately, a baggage handler offered us a ride across the airfield on a luggage cart. I was grateful for that, but I really didn't like riding on top of all those suitcases.

After all that hurrying around, we had to wait three hours for some mechanical problem to be fixed. Jim's always dealing with mechanical problems at home, but somehow they never get fixed. I hoped the airline mechanics were better.

I made sure to get the aisle seat, since the little boy in the middle of our row looked as though he wanted to talk. I wanted to read my books. I had brought five because I never know what I'll feel like reading. Jim says I should try reading magazines—they're lighter. After a while, the child next to Jim began to fuss and carry on. Jim calmed him down, though. Jim's very good with children.

After we had been in the air for a couple of hours, I called the flight attendant and asked for a cup of tea. I find tea very soothing on long flights. The flight attendant told me I should wait a little while for the tea. The pilot was anticipating some bumpy weather, and she was afraid the tea might spill. Fine. I could wait. I looked in my bag for a soothing book.

I noticed Jim and the little boy playing together with Jim's watch. That was sweet. But then Jim gave the boy his watch. That was strange. I looked in my bag for a book about children.

I was looking forward to lunch because I had ordered a special low-calorie meal. The food at our hotel had been so delicious, I had gone a little overboard. Every morning I had had a big pineapple muffin, and every night I had eaten a pineapple sundae for dessert. Now I wanted to get back to eating food that was better for me. When my meal came, I was surprised to see that it consisted of a big helping of pasta, a pineapple muffin,

and a small pineapple sundae. There were also a lot of those little packaged foods that take so long to unwrap. When I asked the attendant if this was a diet meal, she said she had sent all the diet meals back. She thought people would need more food after that three-hour delay. I got the soothing book out of my bag again.

After lunch, I asked the flight attendant again for a cup of tea. This time she brought it. But it wasn't hot—it was barely warm. When I asked her about that, she said there was still a chance of bumpy weather. This way, if the tea spilled it wouldn't burn me. I kept reading the soothing book.

As we were moving down the aisle to leave the plane, I noticed the mother of the little boy talking to Jim. She must have been thanking him for amusing her child. While they were talking, the boy came up to me and asked if he could reset my watch. What a nice child! Maybe I should have sat next to him after all.

We had to wait a little while in the airport before our connecting flight arrived. I spent the time reading a book on how to get what you want. When I started to check my watch, I realized I had forgotten to get it back from the little boy. It was an inexpensive watch, but I was sure the boy would feel terrible when he realized he still had it. I didn't say anything to Jim.

Finally, we arrived at our own little airport. But Bill wasn't there to pick us up. He had had some trouble with his car. I was sure though, having read that last book, that I could find us a way home. We tried renting a car and taking a bus, with no luck. Finally, I got a cab for us. Then all I had to do was help the driver finish his crossword puzzle so we could leave. My books came in handy for that, too!

Questions

1. When a plane is flying through bad weather,
 - a) passengers need more books to read
 - b) the pilot does not allow tea to be served
 - c) passengers do not need as much food
 - d) the passengers' drinks may not stay in their cups
2. Both times that Kate asked for tea, she was
 - a) disappointed
 - b) in a hurry
 - c) satisfied
 - d) hungry

Narrative Lesson 3-02

3. Which statement about Kate is true?
 - a) She likes to finish one book before she starts another.
 - b) She likes to read while she is waiting.
 - c) She likes to drink tea when the weather is bad.
 - d) She likes to talk to people on long flights.
4. When Kate says that Jim is good with children, she means that
 - a) he fusses at them
 - b) he doesn't pay any attention to them
 - c) he reads magazines to them
 - d) he knows how to make them happy
5. Kate ordered a special meal because
 - a) she liked pineapple
 - b) she had eaten too much at the hotel
 - c) she could not get a cup of tea
 - d) she was tired of reading books
6. The meaning of "bumpy" as used in the fourth paragraph is
 - a) steep
 - b) broken
 - c) rough
 - d) hilly
7. Which of the following statements best describes Kate's attitude toward the little boy at first?
 - a) she wanted to give him her watch
 - b) she wanted to read a story to him
 - c) she wanted to talk to him
 - d) she wanted to stay away from him
8. In the first paragraph, Kate implies that Jim should have
 - a) reconfirmed their flight
 - b) taken the suitcases off the luggage cart
 - c) made a plane reservation
 - d) gotten to the airport earlier
9. The next-to-last paragraph implies that
 - a) Kate felt bad because her watch was so inexpensive
 - b) Kate thought the little boy had kept her watch by mistake
 - c) Kate wanted to find out how to get her watch back
 - d) Kate was upset with the little boy
10. Kate thought it was a good idea to
 - a) get her watch back from the little boy
 - b) tell Jim about her watch
 - c) help the taxi driver
 - d) reset her watch herself

Jim's Diary

Sunday, June 16th

Kate and I got up early this morning, so we could get to the airport in plenty of time for our flight home. But there was a big surprise waiting for us when we checked in. Our flight had been switched to a different airline. This meant that we were supposed to be at a different terminal, on the other side of the airport. We were not only in the wrong place, but also late. The new flight was leaving a half hour earlier. We seemed to be the only passengers who didn't know all this. Maybe we were the only passengers who didn't reconfirm our flight the day before. They say it's a good idea to do that, and now I know why.

We made it to our plane in time, but unfortunately, takeoff was delayed. There was a problem with the windshield wipers. I know how that is. I have a lot of trouble with the windshield wipers on my car.

Our plane was one of those wide-bodied ones, with short rows of seats on either side and longer rows in the middle. We had seats in the middle section, next to a family with a small child. When the plane didn't take off right away, the little boy beside me began to whine and cry. I told him a story about two travelers who almost missed their plane because they were at the wrong terminal and who had to be driven to their plane at the last minute on a baggage cart. The little boy fell asleep.

I love flying east because you save so much time. Our plane was scheduled to leave Honolulu at 6:30 in the morning and arrive at San Francisco at 2:30 in the afternoon. That's only eight hours, for a flight that takes ten hours! I like saving those two hours, even if it's only because we're flying into a different time zone. Of course, if you count the three hours it took the airline to fix the windshield wipers, maybe we lost an hour today. It's hard to tell.

When the little boy sitting next to me woke up, he asked me what time it was. I gave him my watch, and I showed him how to set it back two hours. He put my watch in his pocket and fell asleep again. Oh, well. I figured I had 10 hours to get it back.

A lot of people complain about airline food, but I like it. I like unwrapping all those little packages that come with your meal—the wedge of cheese, the crackers, the piece of chocolate. It gives me something to do when I'm tired of reading magazines.

At lunch time, I told the little boy I'd give him my chocolate if he'd return my watch. He wasn't interested. I had to hand over my cheese and my crackers and the chocolate before he would give up the watch. At least he reset it for me. He punched one button to make the hour blink, then another button to change the hour, just the way I showed him. Pretty smart kid. I hope Kate didn't notice that I temporarily lost my watch.

When we were leaving the plane at San Francisco, I told the mother of the boy that her son had done a good job resetting my watch. She said he was interested in watches, and that he had a whole collection of them that people had given him.

We had to wait half an hour for our connecting flight. That wasn't too bad. But sometimes layovers can be a big waste of time. I remember having to wait for four hours once in a small airport. There wasn't much to do except buy popcorn and watch the planes. Luckily, I was able to observe a ground crew changing the windshield wipers on an airplane. So I got some ideas on how to change mine next time. Kate didn't mind the wait today. She was busy reading all the books she had brought. Now I know why our suitcases were so heavy.

It's funny how a trip of 2400 miles can be easier than a trip of 12 miles. The plane ride was no trouble at all compared with our trip home from the airport. First of all, our friend Bill never showed up. He had problems with his car. We couldn't manage to rent a car or take a bus either. Kate finally called us a cab, which worked fine. We just had to wait a little while until the driver finished his crossword puzzle.

Questions

- The little boy sitting beside Jim on the plane was
 - confused
 - clever
 - generous
 - sorry
- If Jim ever saw the little boy again, he would probably
 - ask the boy to give his chocolate back
 - ask the boy what time it was in Hawaii
 - not let the boy have his watch
 - ask the boy to give his watch back
- When Jim writes that a trip of 2400 miles can be easier than a trip of 12 miles, he means that
 - people can sleep on a long plane ride
 - on a long trip, details are often taken care of by someone else
 - more baggage is required on short trips
 - an airplane is faster than a bus or taxi
- Which of the following statements expresses what Jim thinks?
 - Flying east takes less time than flying west.
 - Flying east seems to save time.
 - Flying takes more time when different time zones are involved.
 - Flying is sometimes a big waste of time.
- When Jim figured that he had 10 hours to get his watch back, he was probably thinking that
 - the little boy would wake up soon
 - the flight would be delayed again
 - it might be difficult to get his watch back
 - the little boy wanted to give his watch back
- Which statement is true of the little boy?
 - He didn't have any watches of his own.
 - He didn't like Jim's watch.
 - He didn't understand how watches work.
 - He was difficult to deal with.
- Jim probably prefers that Kate take magazines on a trip rather than books because
 - magazines weigh less than books
 - magazines are cheaper than books
 - magazines take up little space in suitcases
 - magazines are useful in solving crossword puzzles
- Compared with the little boy, Jim
 - was less cheerful
 - was less sleepy
 - was better at resetting watches
 - liked chocolate more
- Which statement best summarizes Jim's thoughts about reconfirming an airline flight?
 - You should do it if other people do it.
 - It's required only if your flight has been changed.
 - It's not necessary if you get to the airport early.
 - It's more important than you might think.
- What Jim says about windshield wipers implies that he
 - is good at fixing things
 - is interested in fixing things but not very good at it
 - does not like trying to fix things
 - would rather change the windshield wipers on a plane than on a car

Narrative Lesson 3-03

Jim's Travel Experiences

If you want to travel, you have to plan ahead. A few summers ago, I flew to Germany to visit an old college friend of mine in Berlin. My friend and his wife and I took a train to a concert in Cologne. By the time the concert was over, there were no more trains going back to Berlin. It was also too late to rent a car—all of the car-rental places were closed. I guess we could have taken a taxi, but riding in a taxi for six hours would have cost a lot of money—more than we were willing to spend. Of course, we had not thought of reserving hotel rooms in Cologne, so we didn't have anywhere to go.

Every hotel we went to was full. One hotel manager said we could sleep in an old stable out back where his grandfather had kept carriage horses many years ago, but we told him no thanks. It was so late that some hotels didn't even have a clerk at the front desk. Finally, we were told we could rest in the lobby of a hotel, as long as we didn't make too much noise. There wasn't any danger of that. We were all very tired.

Of course, the lobby was so loud that we couldn't sleep. People were coming and going and laughing and talking all night long. I wished that we had planned ahead. If we had reserved hotel rooms, we could have been sleeping peacefully instead of sitting in a lobby watching a half a dozen accountants from a tour group hitting each other on the shoulder and telling jokes.

Another time, I was flying home from my uncle's funeral in Detroit, with a layover in Pittsburgh. I had forgotten to bring an extra set of clothes, so I was wearing an expensive three-piece suit of my uncle's. I didn't have very much money, though. I had figured that since I would be flying for just a few hours, I didn't need to carry much cash with me.

This was a bad idea. While I was in Pittsburgh, there was a huge snowstorm. I had to wait in the airport for over five hours. Since I had only about six dollars, I had to choose between buying some food or buying a book to help pass the time. (I had also forgotten to bring something to read.) I decided to buy *Pittsburgh on Five Dollars a Day*—the only book I could find in the airport bookstore for six dollars. Because I was wearing a nice suit, the saleswoman didn't even believe me when I told her I was spending my last penny on a book! I didn't get anything to eat, of course. By the time I got home, I was starved.

In addition to planning ahead, you have to pay attention to details. I missed a flight once because I didn't pay attention to the way the departure time was written on my plane ticket. It was written in 24-hour time, which is used in most parts of the world. In this system, 4:00 in the afternoon is shown as 16:00, and 10:00 at night is 22:00.

I was heading home after my Berlin trip, and I had just spent a few days sightseeing in London. I was going to fly out that afternoon, so I looked at my ticket to see what time the flight left. The ticket said 16:30. For some reason, I thought this meant 6:30 p.m., when of course it meant 4:30 p.m. So rather than going to the airport, I went to see *La Captive*, a very subtle and weighty French movie.

By the time I realized my mistake, it was too late to catch my flight. I had to pay several hundred pounds for a new ticket, on a flight leaving the next day. I also had to spend another hundred pounds for a hotel room. Fortunately, I had enough money left to buy some food, but not much.

When you're traveling, you have to plan ahead. If you are going to be spending the night in a strange city, it's probably a good idea to reserve a hotel room. If you are flying in the dead of winter, it might be a good idea to carry some extra clothes and a little bit of money, in case something unexpected happens. And make sure you understand your departure time, so you aren't sitting in a movie theater when you should be getting into a taxi to go to the airport. Also, never try to travel with a pet snake. But that's another story.

Questions

1. Which statement best summarizes the first paragraph?
 - a) Many businesses close early in the summer.
 - b) Trains do not run late at night in some cities.
 - c) Travelers should check train schedules ahead of time.
 - d) Cities offer varied means of transportation.
2. In what way are the first and second paragraphs most different?
 - a) The first is about trains; the second is about hotel rooms.
 - b) The first is about hotel rooms; the second is about a hotel lobby.
 - c) The first is about three people; the second is about many people.
 - d) The first is about a problem; the second is about possible solutions.

Narrative Lesson 3-04

3. In 24-hour time,
 - a) ten o'clock occurs both in the morning and at night
 - b) time is expressed as the number of hours since noon
 - c) time is expressed as the number of hours since midnight
 - d) there is no difference between 16:30 and 6:30
4. The saleswoman in the airport assumed that
 - a) Jim wanted something to eat
 - b) Jim did not have enough money for the book
 - c) Jim did not want to pay for the book
 - d) someone who is wearing good clothes has enough money to spend
5. What does Jim think about taking a taxi when there is no train?
 - a) It is never a good idea.
 - b) It is not a good idea for long distances.
 - c) It is not a good idea in Cologne.
 - d) It is not a good idea late at night.
6. What Jim writes about the hotel lobby suggests that
 - a) it was not a good place to rest
 - b) they should have chosen a different hotel
 - c) it would have been better to sleep in the stable
 - d) the manager of the hotel should have told everyone to be quiet
7. Which statement best describes Jim's experience with the French movie?
 - a) The movie was shown at the wrong time.
 - b) The movie was hard to understand.
 - c) Going to see the movie was a mistake.
 - d) The movie cost several hundred dollars.
8. Jim's experience in the Pittsburgh airport taught him that
 - a) it's a bad idea to go to Pittsburgh in the winter
 - b) it's difficult to buy a book when you're wearing a nice suit
 - c) it's better to buy food than to buy a book
 - d) it's a good idea to take a little extra money on a trip
9. What does the first paragraph have most in common with the fifth paragraph?
 - a) Both are about spending money.
 - b) Both mention a city.
 - c) Both mention a means of transportation.
 - d) Both discuss mistakes the author made.
10. When Jim writes that for some reason he thought 16:30 meant 6:30, he means that
 - a) he thought the movie began at 6:30 in the evening
 - b) he did not look at the ticket carefully
 - c) he did not understand 24-hour time
 - d) he thought his flight left at 4:30 in the morning

Getting Around With Jim

When I was going to college in New York City, I never needed a car. If I wanted to buy some food for breakfast or go to a coffee shop, I just walked a block and a half down the street. If I had further to go, I took a subway or the bus. I knew the schedules for the buses I used, so getting around on them was no problem. I did have to spend a dollar or two, and I was sometimes uncomfortable and crowded on the subway, but I could go wherever I wanted without much trouble.

Owning a car would have been a lot of trouble, though. Parking would have been very expensive, and the traffic in the part of town where I lived was just awful. Most of the time, it seemed as though walking somewhere was faster than driving would have been.

Of course, in many places a car is the only way to get around. Only a few cities have a good subway system, and not all of them have convenient buses. When I left college, I moved to a small town that had neither a subway nor buses. I owned a clunky old car that I had bought from my brother-in-law for \$800. Just driving it from New York cost me about half of that in repairs. On the highway I had a flat tire, which had to be replaced. I also had to get a new muffler pipe because the old one was rusted through. Finally, I had some trouble with the windshield wipers that I still don't fully understand.

Once I got the car to where I was living, it treated me better. At least, I didn't have to spend so much money repairing it all the time. But it was a big car, and that meant that I had to buy a lot of gasoline. It seemed as though I had to fill it up every time I took it out for a drive. After two years, the engine broke down completely. I sold the car to a junkyard for \$80 and decided to buy a brand-new one.

I thought that buying a new car would be easy, but it turned out to be complicated. For one thing, I had to choose among many different kinds of cars. At first I thought I had enough money for a flashy sports car, but I was wrong. I would have had to work twice as hard to afford such a thing. Then I thought I could save money by buying an economy car, but it was so small I could barely fit inside. I looked at a roomy sedan and an enormous sports utility vehicle, but they were both too expensive. Besides, the SUV needed even more gasoline than my old clunker. Even if I could have afforded the monthly payments, the gas would have taken the rest of my money. I finally decided to get a

station wagon. It was large enough for me to fit inside, and it didn't cost more than I was paying in rent. I've seen cars that would be more fun to drive, but that station wagon got me where I wanted to go. That was enough for me. Sometimes, when I'm traveling, I'll see if I can rent a nice expensive car for a day or two. That'd be fun.

I don't always drive. When I'm going long distances, for example, I fly. Once, when I was in college, I flew to San Francisco for a wedding. I thought about renting a car and driving back across the country, but that would have been expensive. Driving from California to New York may be an interesting experience, but it's much cheaper to fly.

Sometimes I take the bus from one city to another. It's a little less convenient than driving, but I can read or sleep and it's usually pretty cheap. Once or twice I've taken the train. Trains can be cheap or expensive, depending on what country you're in. In the United States, they tend to cost quite a bit.

I usually enjoy driving, and I never mind flying. I like looking at the clouds and the sky out of those little windows, and I like talking to the people I meet. I have gotten around the country in many different ways—by bus, subway, train, car, and airplane. I think that what I really like, however, is to stay at home and see what's on TV and what's in the refrigerator.

Questions

- When Jim says that walking in New York seemed faster than driving, he means that
 - most people did not have cars
 - the speed limit for cars was very low
 - cars went slowly and stopped frequently
 - he was a very fast walker
- Jim uses the term "clunker" to refer to
 - an economy car
 - an old car that needs a lot of repairs
 - a car that is too small
 - a car that is fun to drive
- With which of the following statements would Jim probably agree?
 - In a city, driving is better than walking.
 - An old car is cheaper to run than a new one.
 - A car is the best way to travel.
 - It is not always a good idea to own a car.
- Jim sold his old car to a junkyard because
 - it wouldn't run any longer
 - it needed a new muffler pipe
 - he could no longer fit inside it
 - he needed the money for gas
- The station wagon Jim bought was different from his old car mostly in that
 - it was smaller
 - it was more dependable
 - it was more fun to drive
 - it was flashier
- Jim thinks that trains in the United States
 - are an expensive way to travel
 - are less convenient than driving
 - are the best way to see the country
 - can be cheap or expensive, depending on where you're going
- Why was buying a new car complicated?
 - Jim could not afford some of the cars
 - One of the cars needed even more gas than Jim's old car.
 - Most of the cars would not get Jim where he wanted to go.
 - There were many factors to consider.
- Jim would be likely to take a plane if
 - he were going from one city to another
 - he wanted to see the country
 - he were traveling a long distance
 - a train were not available
- Why did Jim often take the subway in New York?
 - It was comfortable.
 - It cost less than the bus.
 - He had trouble finding a place to park.
 - It was convenient.
- For Jim, flying is
 - always better than driving
 - always acceptable
 - always better than taking the bus
 - always expensive

Narrative Lesson 3-05

The History of Travel

People have always traveled. People have always moved. People have always migrated from one place to the next. Thousands of years ago, people migrated in order to find new places to hunt and fish. For example, most scientists believe that North America was settled by people who crossed a land bridge from Asia. Over the course of many centuries, these people migrated through North and South America in pursuit of new mammoth and mastodon hunting grounds. Scientists are still unsure exactly how they traveled and how quickly they moved from place to place.

For thousands of years, people have traveled great distances to trade goods. During the Middle Ages, caravans carrying silk and spices traveled along the “Silk Road,” from China across the Middle East and all the way to Europe—a distance of several thousand miles. Travel was difficult and slow during that time. Often, camels were the only means of transportation. This made silk and rare spices very expensive in Europe.

Now, advances in technology have made possible far more international trade. People who trade goods like silk and spices, as well as more modern products like computers and cars, now travel between Asia, Europe, and the Americas by plane. In the late 13th century, it took Marco Polo, a European traveler, five years to travel with members of his merchant family from Venice to China. Now, an airplane passenger who wishes to negotiate a trade deal can complete this journey in a matter of hours. The huge freighters that carry goods across oceans can travel from China to Europe in less than four weeks. Camels are no longer required, but the need to move goods long distances in order to trade them remains.

Throughout history, armies have traveled for long distances attempting to conquer. In 1812, Napoleon Bonaparte entered Russia with an army of over 500,000 soldiers. They marched for hundreds of miles, through the hot Russian summer and the miserably cold Russian winter. The troops were planning to forage food from the countryside, but the Russians preferred to burn their crops rather than give them to the French. Napoleon conquered Moscow, but the city burned to the ground soon after he entered it, leaving his army without shelter—cold as well as hungry. Napoleon was forced to retreat with terrible losses.

Thousands of people leave their homes every year to settle in other countries. These people do not travel in large groups, like Napoleon’s army. For the most part, immigrants travel alone, with their families, or in other small groups. Sometimes they join family members who have immigrated before them. People immigrate in search of better jobs and a better life for themselves and their children, or because of trouble in their home country. Countries admit immigrants for a variety of reasons, but they usually welcome workers who have skills and experience that employers need.

Most immigrants stay in their new country for the rest of their lives, but many people travel for shorter lengths of time. During high school and college, some young people choose to study abroad for a time. The University of Groningen, in the northern part of the Netherlands, has a tradition of seeking out international students. It maintains exchange programs with universities in several developing countries, offering scholarships and other assistance to foreign students. Some of these students learn skills that help them contribute to the economic development of their home countries. Exchange programs also exist between families in different countries. All of these programs help students improve language skills and create international friendships.

Many people like to travel as tourists, seeing new places, meeting new people, and trying new foods. Some people like to visit museums and old buildings on their vacation, in places like Paris, Beijing, or Jerusalem. Others might enjoy taking a long walk on the Appalachian Trail in the United States or climbing Tanzania’s Mount Kilimanjaro. Some dance and have fun in Acapulco or Hong Kong. A lot of people just want to relax on a beach, especially one like the white, sandy beaches of the Fiji Islands.

The desert land of Rajasthan, in the northwestern part of India, is home to thousands of wandering musicians. For centuries, these people and their ancestors have been traveling from village to village to entertain their fellow citizens at rituals and celebrations. Now, some of them travel on airplanes to share their ancient folk music with people in Europe and North America. Their reason for traveling remains the same—to give pleasure and inspiration to others. But they now do it in an entirely new way.

Questions

1. The phrase "land bridge," as used in the first paragraph, refers to
 - a) a place where people from Asia settled
 - b) a piece of land that once connected two continents
 - c) a bridge that crossed from one piece of land to another
 - d) the connection between North and South America
2. Napoleon's army after the conquest of Moscow could best be described as
 - a) eager
 - b) powerful
 - c) healthy
 - d) unhappy
3. What is the meaning of the sentence "But they now do it in an entirely new way"?
 - a) They travel for different reasons.
 - b) They use modern transportation.
 - c) They go to different places.
 - d) They no longer travel.
4. Which sentence is true?
 - a) International traders now travel the Silk Road by plane.
 - b) Marco Polo spent five years traveling to China and back.
 - c) Some traders in silk and spices still use camels.
 - d) People still travel long distances for the purpose of trade.
5. The next-to-last paragraph implies that
 - a) there are many different ways of enjoying a vacation
 - b) someone who likes to visit museums would not like the Appalachian Trail
 - c) one would not go to the Fiji Islands to take a long walk
 - d) Hong Kong does not have old buildings
6. The topic of the sixth paragraph is
 - a) immigration
 - b) studying in other countries
 - c) economic development
 - d) high school and college
7. Napoleon's troops were hungry because
 - a) the crops had been burned
 - b) the city had been burned
 - c) the winter was cold
 - d) they had to forage for food
8. With which statement would the author probably agree?
 - a) Camels have never been a very good way to travel.
 - b) Only skilled workers are allowed to immigrate.
 - c) Travel has not always been easy.
 - d) Only armies travel in large groups.
9. If Marco Polo were traveling to China today, he would probably go by
 - a) airplane
 - b) camel
 - c) car
 - d) freighter
10. People migrated from North America to South America because
 - a) they had things to trade
 - b) they were trying to avoid trouble
 - c) they were looking for a land bridge
 - d) they were looking for food

Narrative Lesson 3-06

Grammar: Negative Constructions

“He never called.” “I don’t know.” “No one came.” “Neither bus goes there.” These are all examples of negative constructions—ways of saying that something didn’t happen. Some words used to express negation in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “never,” “neither,” and “nothing.”

When a pronoun such as “neither” or “none” is used to express negation, its meaning should be well understood. For example, “neither” refers to a choice among things that are specified: “The man showed Jim two cars, but he wanted neither.” “None,” on the other hand, refers to an unspecified number: “Jim wanted a convertible, but there were none.”

To negate the verb “to be” in the simple present or past tense, “not” is added after the verb. “Bill is late” becomes “Bill is not late.” Negating any other verb in the simple present or past requires changing the verb so that it uses the auxiliary verb “to do” and adding “not.” “Jim and Kate know where Bill is” becomes “Jim and Kate do not know where Bill is.” “Bill tried to call them” becomes “Bill didn’t try to call them.”

When two independent clauses each contain a negative verb, they are connected by “nor” instead of by “and.” The second clause needs no other negative. An example is “The bus did not go to Water Street, nor did it go near there.”

Normally, only one negative is used at a time. Using two together results in a double negative, which is not only ungrammatical, but confusing. One negative negates the other, and the result is a positive statement—probably not what the speaker intends.

Some negative constructions suggest that something almost didn’t happen. “Kate could hardly hear what Jim said,” means that Kate almost didn’t hear Jim. In this case, “hardly” acts as a negative, and no other negative may be used with it.

Often, a negative idea can be expressed in more than one way. “I had no money,” and “I didn’t have any money,” are both correct. Notice that “any” is used in negative constructions instead of “some.” It is fine to say, “I had some money,” but if that sentence is negated, “some money” is no longer correct.

Word order is important in negative constructions. When the verb consists of an auxiliary with an infinitive form, “not” is placed between the two:

“I will not forget.” “Not” also goes between a verb and an infinitive: “I tried not to forget.”

In a question using a negative, contractions are usually used. For example, “won’t,” the contraction for “will not,” is used in the question “Won’t you forget?”

Questions

- Kate and Jim _____ to pick them up at the airport.
 - had anyone
 - had no one
 - hadn’t someone
 - hadn’t nobody
- Kate and Jim _____ that their friend hadn’t come.
 - hardly didn’t believe
 - couldn’t hardly believe
 - could hardly believe
 - hardly believe
- The rental agent _____ Jim a convertible.
 - not rented
 - rented not
 - didn’t rented
 - didn’t rent
- Kate asked the rental agent _____ them expensive cars.
 - to not show
 - not show
 - never show
 - not to show
- He showed them several cars, but Kate wanted _____.
 - none of them
 - not them
 - any of them
 - some of them
- “_____ you have any economy cars?” asked Kate.
 - Do not
 - Don’t
 - Neither
 - Never do
- There were _____ cars in the lot.
 - not some
 - any
 - none
 - no

Narrative Lesson 3-07

8. The bus didn't go _____ near Water Street.
a) somewhere
b) never
c) nowhere
d) anywhere
9. Kate and Jim couldn't drive home, _____ could they take a bus.
a) nor
b) not
c) or
d) and nor
10. Jim tried to hail a taxi, but there _____.
a) were nothing
b) weren't some
c) were none
d) wasn't none

Grammar: Indirect Speech

Usually, the tense of a verb depends on the time of the action it describes. But tense also depends on how an action is reported by a speaker. Examples of this are "Jim said, 'I know,'" and "Jim said that he knew."

In the first example, Jim's words are quoted directly. This is called direct speech. In direct speech, the reported action remains in whatever tense the speaker used—in this case, the present tense. But in indirect speech, shown in the second example, the tense changes depending on the main verb of the sentence. Because Jim was speaking in the past, the reported action is also in the past tense.

If the reported action took place before Jim spoke about it, it would be in the past perfect tense: "Jim said that he had known all along."

In indirect speech, verbs of speaking are often followed by a noun clause beginning with "that": "Kate answered that she wanted to rent a car." The noun clause "that she wanted to rent a car" is the object of the verb "answered." With the verbs "say" and "tell," "that" is often dropped: "Kate said she wanted to rent a car."

Some verbs of reporting may be followed by noun clauses other than "that" clauses. Instead of saying, "The bus driver told them that the next bus would come in an hour," we can say, "The bus driver told them when the next bus would come" or "The bus driver told them how long they would have to wait for the next bus." The last two examples tell us something about what the bus driver said, but not as much as the first example does.

Noun phrases similar to those above are also used in indirect questions. Two examples are "Jim and Kate asked the bus driver when the bus would come" and "Jim and Kate asked the bus driver how long they would have to wait." If the question can be answered by yes or no, the noun clause is introduced by "if" or "whether": "Jim and Kate asked the bus driver whether another bus would come in an hour."

When we use the verb "to tell," we can refer to the person being spoken to by means of an indirect object, without using "to": "Kate told the man she wanted to rent a car." If "say" were used in this sentence, "to" and "that" would have to be used: "Kate said to the man that she wanted to rent a car." Verbs such as "tell" and "ask" can also be followed by an infinitive or infinitive phrase: "Kate asked the man to rent them a car."

Questions

1. Bill said that his car _____ down.
 - a) will break
 - b) broke
 - c) had broken
 - d) has broken
2. "My car _____ down," said Bill.
 - a) broken
 - b) has broken
 - c) will broken
 - d) have broken
3. The rental agent promised _____ Kate and Jim.
 - a) to have helped
 - b) that he helped
 - c) that he would help
 - d) he will help
4. He asked them _____ insurance.
 - a) did they want
 - b) whether they wanted
 - c) would they want
 - d) will they want
5. Kate said that they _____ to spend a lot of money.
 - a) didn't want
 - b) won't want
 - c) will want
 - d) weren't wanting
6. Kate _____ Jim that they should rent a cheap car.
 - a) told
 - b) asked to
 - c) said
 - d) told to
7. Jim and Kate said they wanted a bus that _____ near Water Street.
 - a) is going
 - b) will going
 - c) will go
 - d) went
8. They asked the driver how long it _____ until the next bus came.
 - a) was
 - b) would be
 - c) is
 - d) will be
9. Jim wondered _____ they could do next.
 - a) how
 - b) that
 - c) whether
 - d) what
10. Kate told the dispatcher _____ a driver to the airport.
 - a) sending
 - b) to send
 - c) send
 - d) he will send

Narrative Lesson 3-08

Grammar: Causative Constructions

Sometimes we do things, and sometimes we get other people to do them. In the previous sentence, “get other people to do them” is a causative construction. The idea is that the subject of the sentence makes something happen by means of another person.

A common way to express causation is to use the verb “to have” with the infinitive form of a verb. The person who is to perform the action is named between the two verbs. An example is “Kate had the driver stop the bus,” meaning “Kate caused the driver to stop the bus.”

Another way to express causation using the verb “to have” is to talk about the object of the action instead of the person who is to act. Here the past participle form is used instead of the infinitive form: “Kate had the bus stopped.” This construction, which employs the passive voice, does not say who did the stopping. Of course, we can indicate this if we like: “Kate had the bus stopped by a policeman.”

Other verbs, such as “make” and “get,” can be used to show causation in slightly different ways. “Make,” for example, can be used with an adjective instead of a verb, to say that a person or thing is caused to be a certain way: “He makes her happy.” “Make it red.” Another difference is that “make” can be used with active constructions only. It is correct to say, “Kate made the driver stop the bus,” but this sentence cannot be changed to use the passive voice.

When the verb “to get” is used in a causative construction, “to” is kept with the infinitive form: “Jim got the man to fix his watch.” “Get” can also be used with the passive voice: “Jim got his watch fixed.”

Sometimes the verb “need” is used to express general causality without naming the person doing the causing. This can be done in one of two ways. In the first, the infinitive form without “to” is used. “Kate need not wash the dish” means the same thing as “Kate doesn’t need to wash the dish.” This construction is always negative and present tense. It may be possible to turn a sentence like this around to form a second type of causative construction: “The dish needs washing.” Here, the appropriate tense of “need” is used rather than the infinitive, followed by a verb in gerund form.

Questions

1. Jim said they _____ look for Bill; they could let Bill find them.
a) need not to
b) needed
c) need not
d) didn’t need
2. Jim tried to _____ Kate to keep her phone in her purse.
a) make
b) get
c) have
d) need
3. After Jim answered the phone, the clothes needed _____ up.
a) picked
b) be picked
c) to pick
d) picking
4. Bill had Kate and Jim’s names _____ over the intercom.
a) to be announced
b) be announced
c) announced
d) to announce
5. Kate _____ show them the message.
a) had the man to
b) had the man
c) got the man
d) said the man
6. The attendant got Kate and Jim _____ him their driver’s licenses.
a) gave
b) give
c) to give
d) will give
7. Jim and Kate _____ the attendant to show them what was in the parking lot.
a) need not
b) made
c) had
d) got

8. Kate's cell phone _____ a cab easy.
- a) was calling
 - b) made calling
 - c) got calling
 - d) had calling
9. Kate _____ to where she and Jim were waiting.
- a) got sent a taxi
 - b) had a taxi
 - c) had a taxi be sent
 - d) had a taxi sent
10. Trying to find a way home _____.
- a) made Kate and Jim tired
 - b) got tired Kate and Jim
 - c) got Kate and Jim to be tired
 - d) made tired Kate and Jim

HOUSING

Contents

Unit 4 Picture Lessons

4-01	Kitchen.....	47
4-02	Location: Country, City, Suburb	48
4-03	Utilities and Services	49
4-04	Bedroom, Bath, Laundry.....	50
4-05	Renting and Buying	51
4-06	Looking for a New Residence.....	52
4-07	Dining Room, Living Room, Office	53
4-08	Repairs and Maintenance	54
4-09	When Things Go Wrong.....	55
4-10	What to Do and Where to Do It.....	56
4-11	Review Lesson	57

Unit 5 Video Lessons: Finding a Place to Live

5-01	Not Enough Room	60
5-02	A Carryout Dinner	62
5-03	Difficulty Unpacking	62
5-04	Finding an Apartment.....	64
5-05	Big Kitchen, Small Ledge	66
5-06	Two Bedrooms and a Yard	66
5-07	Negotiating the Lease.....	68

Unit 6 Narrative Lessons

6-01	Kate's Diary	79
6-02	Jim's Diary	80
6-03	The Landlord Speaks of Housing	82
6-04	The History of Buildings.....	83
6-05	Grammar: Articles and Indefinite Adjectives.....	85
6-06	Grammar: Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns	86
6-07	Grammar: Verb Tenses	87

4-01 Kitchen

- 01 She will bake a cake in here.
She will use this to make coffee.
He will use this to defrost the meat.
He will freeze the leftovers in here.
- 02 Using this is easier than washing dishes in the sink.
Using this is easier than stirring the batter by hand.
Using this is easier than cutting the vegetables with a knife.
Using this is easier than sweeping with a broom.
- 03 You might use a roasting pan for this.
You might use a frying pan for these.
You might use a kettle to boil water for this.
You might use a pot to boil water for this.
- 04 If you want toast for breakfast, you're going to have to plug this in.
If you want cereal for breakfast, you're going to have to get milk.
The recipe says to boil the water before adding the tomatoes. Matt isn't following the recipe.
The recipe says to boil the water before adding the tomatoes. Matt is following the recipe.
- 05 The recipe says to bake the cake for 45 minutes at 350 degrees F. It's been 15 minutes.
The recipe says to bake the cake for 45 minutes at 350 degrees F. It's been 44 minutes.
The recipe says to cook the soup over medium heat. The stove is too hot.
The recipe says to cook the soup over medium heat. The stove is too cold.
- 06 The soup recipe calls for a half teaspoon of salt.
John's soup will be too salty.
The cookie recipe calls for a cup of sugar. John's cookies won't be very sweet.
You should boil water over high heat. This burner doesn't need to be turned up.
You should boil water over high heat. This burner needs to be turned up.
- 07 The instructions say to refrigerate after opening.
He shouldn't leave this here.
The instructions say to heat in the microwave for four minutes on high. He shouldn't use this.
To make some food taste good, you can add a little of this.
To prepare hot tea, you pour hot water in here.
- 08 This place setting has a napkin, a plate, a fork, and a spoon. It is missing a glass and a knife. The spoons are in the right-hand drawer and the forks are in the left-hand drawer. Here are the forks.
The cups and glasses are in the cabinet to the right of the refrigerator.
This place setting has a plate, a glass, a spoon, and a knife. It is missing a napkin and a fork.
- 09 Mary spilled this when the phone rang.
Mary cracked this when she dropped it on the floor.
Mary made the leak worse when she tried to fix it.
Mary pulled too hard. Now this needs to be fixed.
- 10 John hates spicy food. He will not like this dish.
John hates spicy food. He might like this soup.
This needs to be thrown in the garbage.
These need to be washed.

4-02 Location: Country, City, Suburb

- 01 These flowers need to be watered often.
They haven't been watered recently.
These flowers need to be watered often.
They were watered yesterday.
The leaves were raked into a neat pile in the yard. They need to be raked again.
Flowers were planted here recently.
They will bloom in three months.
- 02 This house has a long driveway and an attached two-car garage.
This house has a two-car garage, but it is not attached.
This house has a swingset and a shed in the backyard.
This house has a swingset in the backyard, but no shed.
- 03 This fence will keep the dog from running into the street.
This hedge will probably not keep the dog from running into the street.
This sort of mailbox is usually used for apartment buildings.
This sort of mailbox is usually used for a single-family home.
- 04 Sara planted tulip bulbs in her garden today, but they will not bloom for another year.
Tulip bulbs bloom one year after they are planted. The ones in this yard were planted last year.
Marigolds need a large flowerpot to grow well.
This pot is bad for growing marigolds.
Marigolds do not grow well in a small flowerpot.
This pot is good for growing marigolds.
- 05 Jane is not giving this plant enough water.
Jane is giving this plant too much water.
John likes to water the lawn himself after he mows the grass.
John likes to rest after he mows the grass, so he uses this to water the lawn for him.
- 06 She is trimming the hedges. She is not using the right tool.
She is trimming the hedges. She has cut too much.
He keeps his rake in the garage when he's not using it. He is putting it away.
He keeps his rake in the shed when he's not using it. He is putting it away.
- 07 They live in a skyscraper. They used the freight elevator to bring this here.
They live in a skyscraper. They don't do this.
They live in a house in the suburbs. They don't need a place like this for their car.
They live in a house in the suburbs. They don't have one of these in their house.
- 08 Dogs aren't allowed here.
Dogs like it here.
These two live in the city.
These two live in the country.
- 09 This is how you feed birds in the city.
This is how you feed birds in the suburbs.
This is how you feed birds in the country.
This is how you feed birds at the zoo.
- 10 Life here is peaceful.
Life here is hectic.
If you're a guest visiting this building, the doorman will call to make sure that you're expected.
If you're a guest visiting this building, you'll have to buzz the person you're visiting to be let in.

4-03 Utilities and Services

- 01 When John cooks a lot, his gas bill goes up.
When Robert cooks a lot, his electric bill goes up.
Her water bill will be high.
It will cost her a lot to heat her house if it's cold this winter.
- 02 If he keeps all of these things turned on, his electric bill will be high.
He is trying to save money by using less electricity.
She uses an electric heater to keep warm during the winter and an air conditioner to stay cool in the summer. It is summer.
She uses an electric heater to keep warm during the winter and an air conditioner to stay cool in the summer. It is winter.
- 03 His electric bill was due on June 5th.
He didn't pay it on time.
His cable TV bill was due on May 13th.
He didn't pay it on time.
His water bill was due on September 24th.
He didn't pay it on time.
His phone bill was due on December 12th.
He didn't pay it on time.
- 04 If he uses all of these at once, he might blow a fuse.
After he blows a fuse, he has to find the circuit box with a flashlight.
The electric company sends someone to his house to read this every month.
He doesn't get all his electricity from the electric company.
- 05 You can easily see that this uses gas and not electricity.
You can't easily see whether this uses gas or electricity.
If you see this, you know this house uses oil heat.
You can easily see that this uses electricity and not gas.
- 06 He needs an extension cord to plug this in.
He needs an adapter to plug this in.
He needs a power strip for all this.
He needs two AA batteries for this.
- 07 This is delivered to his house once a month.
He can buy this at the store every day or have it delivered to his house.
This is delivered to his house six days a week.
This is delivered to his house on his birthday.
- 08 You'd send this to John Smith at 156 Oak Street.
You'd send this to John over the Internet.
You'd call John at 555-3642.
You'd page John by dialing 555-2675 and then entering the number where you are.
- 09 It is July 1st. It will cost her less than \$1.00 to get a letter to her mother by this date.
It is April 3rd. It will cost her more than \$10.00 to get a letter to her mother by this date.
This is important but not heavy. She will send it by registered mail.
This is heavy. It will cost her a lot of money to send this by air mail.
- 10 He has several phone numbers.
This connects to her TV.
He lives in Dallas and his family lives in the Philippines. This is a cheap way for them to communicate.
Her family lives across town. This is a cheap way for them to talk.

4-04 Bedroom, Bath, Laundry

- 01 In order to take a shower, she needs a clean towel, soap, and shampoo. She has everything she needs to take a shower.
In order to take a shower, she needs a clean towel, soap, and shampoo. She does not have everything she needs to take a shower.
He washes his hands with soap and water before every meal. He is about to eat a meal.
This man does not shave every day. His beard is famous.
- 02 The laundry was washed, dried, and folded. But now it will need to be folded again.
Because he doesn't know how to iron clothes, his shirt is ruined.
He has too many pairs of pants. He should not buy this.
He has too many sports jackets. He should not buy this.
- 03 She dries her laundry in the dryer when it is raining outside. It is sunny and dry outside.
She dries her laundry on a clothesline when the weather is nice. It is raining outside.
He'll need a needle and thread to sew this back on.
He'll use these to mend a tear in his shirt.
- 04 You can put these in the hamper.
You can put these in the bathroom.
You can put these on the bed.
You can put these in the wastebasket.
- 05 These are kept in a dresser.
These are kept in a closet.
These are kept on shelves.
These are kept out of the reach of children.
- 06 These children sleep in bunk beds.
These adults sleep in a king-size bed.
This adult sleeps in a double bed.
This child sleeps in a crib.
- 07 He normally wakes up at 7:00, but he forgot to set the alarm clock.
He normally wakes up at 7:00. Today is Saturday, and he forgot to turn the alarm off.
This is not how shaving cream is supposed to be used.
This is not how shampoo is supposed to be used.
- 08 She prefers closet space to a view. She'd rather have this bedroom.
He'd prefer this bedroom because he likes a nice view and doesn't care about closets.
He likes to take baths. He'd prefer this bathroom.
She only takes showers. This bathroom would be fine with her.
- 09 Robert makes his bed every day. This is not Robert's bed.
Robert makes his bed every day. This is his bed.
Ann's closet is very clean and well organized.
This is Ann's closet.
Ann's closet is very clean and well organized.
This is not Ann's closet.
- 10 Clothes can be folded and kept here.
Medicines can be kept here.
Clothes can be hung up here.
Soap and shampoo can be kept here.

4-05 Renting and Buying

- 01 Many rental properties are leased for this period of time.
A landlord might charge \$1200 a month for this townhouse.
Many home loans are paid back over this period of time.
A home loan might charge this interest rate.
- 02 At times like this, he wishes he had bought a house with aluminum siding.
At times like this, Sara wishes she didn't have carpet.
At times like this, she is glad that she has homeowner's insurance.
At times like this, Robert is glad he's renting and doesn't have to repair his own plumbing.
- 03 If you're going to stay in a city for a week, you might want to sleep in one of these.
If you're going to stay in a city for a year, you might want to rent one of these.
If you're going to live in the suburbs for five years, you might buy one of these.
If you're going to stay in a city for three hours, you might sleep here.
- 04 John bought this building so he could rent the apartments to others. He is the landlord.
Mary and Bill bought this house so they could live in it.
Mary and Bill have rented this house for their vacation.
John and Sara stay in this on their vacation.
It cost them \$100.
- 05 Each apartment in this red brick building has a balcony.
This apartment building has white aluminum siding, and each of the windows has shutters.
This apartment does not come with a balcony, but the building is made of red brick.
A townhouse looks like an individual house, but it is smaller and attached to other townhouses.
- 06 How long is the lease valid?
It is valid for six months.
How long is the lease valid?
It is valid for two years.
I will sign the lease alone. It does not require another person to cosign.
I will sign the lease and my wife will cosign it.
- 07 Robert's landlord doesn't pay for electricity, and his air conditioner runs on electricity. He is worried about the bill.
Ann's landlord pays for gas. Her hot water runs on gas. She's not worried about the bill.
Robert's landlord doesn't pay for the yard work to be done. Robert has to do it himself.
Ann's landlord pays for gas. Her heat runs on gas. She's not worried about the bill.
- 08 If you buy or rent, you'll have to agree to the terms of a contract and sign it.
If you rent and things like this happen, the money to repair the damage will come from your security deposit.
If you rent or buy a property, you'll get these.
This house is inexpensive, but it needs to be renovated.
- 09 Here is your original key with two copies, sir.
A real-estate agent usually helps you buy one of these.
This is useful for finding both rental properties and properties for sale.
I would like you to make two copies of this key.
- 10 Robert wants an apartment with two bedrooms and two full bathrooms. He likes this floor plan.
The newspaper advertisement for this apartment reads, "2 bdrms, 1.5 baths, w/laundry room and balcony."
Mary and Bill want a townhouse. They might like these.
The newspaper advertisement for this house reads, "Brick house, attached garage, 3 bdrms, 2 baths, nice yard in a quiet neighborhood."

4-06 Looking for a New Residence

- 01 Ann has her own furniture. She would prefer an unfurnished apartment like this.
Robert doesn't own any furniture. He would prefer a furnished apartment like this.
Mary doesn't like to live in apartment buildings. She'd prefer a duplex like this.
Robert likes to live around a lot of other people. He'd like this building.
- 02 She doesn't have to go to the laundromat to do her laundry.
Her apartment doesn't have a washer or a dryer. She has to come here to do her laundry.
She doesn't have a dishwasher. She has to wash her dishes in the sink.
This will wash her dishes for her.
- 03 A family of four needs an apartment with at least two bedrooms.
Tom and Mike only need one bedroom.
A single man only needs a studio.
She wants an apartment with more than one bathroom.
- 04 She needs an apartment that allows pets.
This building has a secure entrance.
She would like an apartment with a balcony.
Residents of this building get their mail here.
- 05 She needs an elevator to get to another floor.
He needs a freight elevator to move this to an apartment on another floor.
He could use a storage area for some of his furniture.
This is where she empties her garbage.
- 06 She is storing a box in the attic.
She is storing a box in the basement.
The floors in her apartment are carpeted, so she will need this to clean them.
The floors in her apartment are not carpeted, so she can use this to clean them.
- 07 Ann likes to swim. She'd like this apartment complex.
Robert doesn't like noisy apartments. He wouldn't like to live in the apartment under this family.
He works downtown. This apartment would be convenient for him.
She likes to play tennis. This apartment complex would be good for her.
- 08 He has a 14-year-old son and a 16-year-old son.
This apartment would be convenient for them.
She likes to ride her bicycle and walk in the woods. This apartment would be convenient for her.
His neighbors probably aren't going to like his hobby.
His hobby isn't going to bother his neighbors.
- 09 This apartment building has only on-street parking.
This apartment building has its own parking lot.
This apartment building has its own parking garage.
This apartment building has a guardhouse.
- 10 A townhouse has two stories.
This apartment has a balcony.
This apartment has two bedrooms and two baths.
This apartment has one bedroom and one bath.

4-07 Dining Room, Living Room, Office

- 01 These people will fit on a couch, but it will be tight.
There's no way these people will fit on a couch.
This will fit in a file cabinet.
This won't fit in a file cabinet.
- 02 If she wants to listen to music, she'll use this.
If she wants to record a TV show, she'll use this.
If she wants to write an e-mail, she'll use this.
If it gets too dark, she will turn this on.
- 03 If he has a lot of work to do, he'll sit here.
If he is tired and wants to rest, he'll lie here.
If he has company for dinner, they'll sit here.
If he forgets his house key and is locked out of his house, he'll sit here.
- 04 She prefers rooms with a lot of natural light.
She likes this room.
She prefers rooms with high ceilings. She likes this room.
He likes to have a lot of people over for dinner.
He'd like this dining room table.
He usually eats alone. This table would be fine for him.
- 05 Doing this would stain a carpeted floor.
Doing this would scratch a hardwood floor.
This is used to clean carpeting.
This wouldn't clean carpeting.
- 06 This keeps bugs out.
This keeps the cold out.
This keeps criminals out.
This keeps the noise out.
- 07 If he wants blinds on his windows, he won't like these.
If he wants curtains on his windows, he won't like these.
She always puts a tablecloth on her table.
This isn't her table.
She always uses place mats on her table.
This isn't her table.
- 08 John and Sara have two children. Not all the family members are shown in the photo hanging in the living room.
John and Sara have two children. All the family members are shown in the photo hanging in the dining room.
She expected the walls in her new house to be dark. The walls in her new house surprised her.
She expected the walls in her new house to be dark. The walls in her new house did not surprise her.
- 09 The cookbooks are on the top shelf of the bookcase and the dictionary is on the middle shelf. She needs to look up a word.
The living room wall is decorated with a photo of someone skiing.
The living room wall is decorated with a scenic photo of mountains.
Mary did not expect her husband to buy a large TV. She is surprised.
- 10 The plant is in the bookcase and the book is on the table.
The book is in the bookcase and the plant is on the table.
You can use this type of computer anywhere.
You can't use this type of computer everywhere.

4-08 Repairs and Maintenance

- 01 The instructions say to use a screwdriver. He is not following the instructions.
He is going to hang a picture on a nail.
She needs to tighten a loose screw on her toaster.
She is using a saw to cut the wood that she measured with a tape measure.
- 02 He is using a plumber's wrench on the pipes beneath the sink.
He is waiting for the repairperson to come and fix his furnace.
When the cable is not working, the television does not pick up any channels. The cable is not working.
They want to use wallpaper in the dining room and paint in the bedroom. They are working in the dining room.
- 03 This is a good way to repair a plasterboard wall.
This isn't a good way to repair a plasterboard wall.
To drill a hole, Robert needs this.
To hammer a nail into wood, Robert needs this.
- 04 This will hold two pieces of wood together.
The directions say to stir well.
The sink is leaking because it needs this.
He needs a ladder to reach this.
- 05 To cut this wood, he could use a handsaw.
To cut this wood, he should get a circular saw.
To cut this wood, he should get a chain saw.
It is illegal to cut this wood.
- 06 She needs a plumber.
She needs an electrician.
She needs a roofer.
She needs a mechanic.
- 07 He can carry this in his toolbox.
He can carry this in a bucket.
He can carry this in a wheelbarrow.
He can carry this in a truck.
- 08 Hanging a picture is easy. You can do it yourself.
Hanging plasterboard is difficult. You may need to hire someone.
Repairing a leak can be easy or difficult. You may need to hire a plumber.
Installing cabinets is difficult. You may need to hire a carpenter.
- 09 This light bulb needs to be changed.
This light bulb doesn't need to be changed.
This furnace filter needs to be changed.
This furnace filter doesn't need to be changed.
- 10 The price of the bookshelves doesn't include assembly.
She needs to use a stepladder to replace this light bulb.
You can use a roller to paint this.
You can't use a roller to paint this.

4-09 When Things Go Wrong

- 01 John had been thinking of painting his walls, but this wasn't one of the colors he had in mind.
John had been thinking about getting a swimming pool, but he thought he'd put it outdoors.
John had been thinking of going on a bike ride with Andy, but the living room wasn't the place he had in mind.
John had been thinking of taking Andy skiing, but the staircase wasn't the place he had in mind.
- 02 Robert is expecting a date tonight.
Bill is having the guys over to watch soccer.
Bill is having a birthday party for Jane.
Robert isn't having anyone over tonight.
- 03 This isn't how shaving cream is supposed to be used.
This is how shaving cream is supposed to be used.
This isn't how toothpaste is supposed to be used.
This is how toothpaste is supposed to be used.
- 04 If you're afraid of heights, you shouldn't live here.
If you have two horses and four dogs, you could probably live here.
If you want a nice yard and a quiet street, but you still want to be close to the city, you could live here.
If you were the President of the United States, you would live here.
- 05 The Smiths enjoy doing this on weekends.
The Smiths do this once a week, but they don't really enjoy it.
The person who lives here probably has a good job.
The person who sleeps here probably enjoys living dangerously.
- 06 This is how Sara gets exercise at home.
This is what Sara does when she's tired.
This is what Sara wishes every morning were like.
This is what Sara's mornings are really like.
- 07 The person who lives here is pretty rich.
The person who sleeps here is probably on a trip.
The Smiths come here once a year on vacation.
The Smiths do this almost every day.
- 08 If the lights go out, you might want to check this.
If the smoke detector goes off, you might want to check this.
If you want more fresh air, you might want to turn this on.
If you want your house to be comfortable in summer and winter, you might use this.
- 09 This is a nice place to be in the winter.
This is a nice place to be in the summer.
This lawn needs to be mowed.
This lawn doesn't need to be mowed.
- 10 This driveway needs to be shoveled.
This yard needs to be raked.
This house needs to be painted.
This building needs to be renovated.

4-10 What to Do and Where to Do It

- 01 Most nights, Jacob sleeps here.
Most evenings, Jacob eats dinner here.
In the winter, Jacob has to shovel snow off this.
In the fall, Jacob has to rake the leaves off this.
- 02 When he bakes bread, he does it here.
When he needs ice, he gets it here.
When he wants to turn on the television,
he uses this.
When he wants to heat up food in a hurry,
he uses this.
- 03 When he has guests over, they usually eat here.
When he needs to build something, he usually
works here.
When he needs to repair his car, he usually
works here.
When he needs to relax, he does it here.
- 04 He wishes he had a brick house.
He wishes he had a smaller lawn.
He wishes he didn't have so many trees in
his yard.
He wishes he'd done the dishes yesterday.
- 05 Ann's apartment is so small that her bedroom
is also her dining room.
Sara's lawn is so big that she needs this to
mow it.
Ann doesn't need a big garage.
Sara needs a house surrounded by a lot of land.
- 06 They are going to need another bedroom for the
new arrival.
After her surgery, she is going to move in with
her daughter and her husband.
They will have more room when their son leaves
for college.
After the wedding, they hope to buy a new house.
- 07 The rent is very cheap, but the neighborhood is
not good.
The rent is very expensive, and there is a lot
of traffic.
The house is cheap, but it's far from town.
The house is expensive, and it is in a very
quiet neighborhood.
- 08 If there's a fire at your home, these are the
people to call.
If a crime is committed, these are the people
to call.
If someone is injured, these are the people to call.
If there is a stray dog loose, these are the people
to call.
- 09 If you're going to play a CD, you'll need one
of these.
If you're going to play a videotape, you'll need
one of these.
If you're going to open a can of soup, you'll
need one of these.
If you're going to paint a two-story house,
you'll need one of these.
- 10 Tom's neighbor has a strange way of cutting
the grass.
Tom's neighbor has a strange way of painting
his house.
Tom's neighbor has an unusual parking place
for his car.
Tom's neighbor is going to need Tom's help to
lift this.

4-11 Review Lesson

- 01 Mary spilled this when the phone rang.
Mary cracked this when she dropped it on the floor.
Mary made the leak worse when she tried to fix it.
Mary pulled too hard. Now this needs to be fixed.
- 02 Sara planted tulip bulbs in her garden today, but they will not bloom for another year.
Tulip bulbs bloom one year after they are planted. The ones in this yard were planted last year.
Marigolds need a large flowerpot to grow well.
This pot is bad for growing marigolds.
Marigolds do not grow well in a small flowerpot.
This pot is good for growing marigolds.
- 03 He has several phone numbers.
This connects to her TV.
He lives in Dallas and his family lives in the Philippines. This is a cheap way for them to communicate.
Her family lives across town. This is a cheap way for them to talk.
- 04 She dries her laundry in the dryer when it is raining outside. It is sunny and dry outside.
She dries her laundry on a clothesline when the weather is nice. It is raining outside.
He'll need a needle and thread to sew this back on.
He'll use these to mend a tear in his shirt.
- 05 Robert wants an apartment with two bedrooms and two full bathrooms. He likes this floor plan.
The newspaper advertisement for this apartment reads, "2 bdrms, 1.5 baths, w/laundry room and balcony."
Mary and Bill want a townhouse. They might like these.
The newspaper advertisement for this house reads, "Brick house, attached garage, 3 bdrms, 2 baths, nice yard in a quiet neighborhood."
- 06 Ann likes to swim. She'd like this apartment complex.
Robert doesn't like noisy apartments. He wouldn't like to live in the apartment under this family.
He works downtown. This apartment would be convenient for him.
She likes to play tennis. This apartment complex would be good for her.
- 07 If he has a lot of work to do, he'll sit here.
If he is tired and wants to rest, he'll lie here.
If he has company for dinner, they'll sit here.
If he forgets his house key and is locked out of his house, he'll sit here.
- 08 Hanging a picture is easy. You can do it yourself.
Hanging plasterboard is difficult. You may need to hire someone.
Repairing a leak can be easy or difficult. You may need to hire a plumber.
Installing cabinets is difficult. You may need to hire a carpenter.
- 09 John had been thinking of painting his walls, but this wasn't one of the colors he had in mind.
John had been thinking about getting a swimming pool, but he thought he'd put it outdoors.
John had been thinking of going on a bike ride with Andy, but the living room wasn't the place he had in mind.
John had been thinking of taking Andy skiing, but the staircase wasn't the place he had in mind.
- 10 Ann's apartment is so small that her bedroom is also her dining room.
Sara's lawn is so big that she needs this to mow it.
Ann doesn't need a big garage.
Sara needs a house surrounded by a lot of land.

Video Lessons: Finding a Place to Live

Scene 1 Not Enough Room

Oh, it was great to be home. What a day! We'd been traveling for 12 hours. I was exhausted. I suggested we go to bed. But Jim was thinking of something else. We hadn't eaten! OK, OK, I'll make us some dinner.

You just take these bags to the bedroom. This one, and this one, and don't forget this big one. I can't move with all this stuff in here. There. That's better. Take your time, Jim.

I was moving fast, planning what to fix. Oh! Jim was practically on top of me! "Here," I said. "Fill this." Now. Where's that pot? Oh! Oh, poor Jim—he's always in the wrong place.

Why don't you just get me the lid? Yeah, it's under there... What... what are you doing? Our kitchen was just too small. Let's see—a cup of rice... Oh, Jim! Your head! What a mess! I knew what I had to do.

Hand me the phone. The phone, I need to make a phone call. Four five two, seven three... He asked me if I was calling the doctor for his head. "No," I said, "the Chinese restaurant. Let them make dinner."

Scene 1 Not Enough Room

We finally got to our apartment at 8:30. We'd been traveling 12 straight hours. Kate was exhausted, and she suggested that we go right to bed, but I was hungry. The airline peanuts just weren't enough. I tried to find something to eat, but Kate had another idea.

I should take that bag, and that one, and that one... and get them out of our small kitchen and into the bedroom. She would do the rest.

I thought if I helped Kate, we could eat sooner... But I guess I was standing too close to her. OK, here was something I could do. Fill the pot with water. Here it is... Ow! Couldn't you see me, Kate? I was right next to you!

Get the pot lid? From the cabinet down there? Sure. Sorry. There wasn't much room. Let's see. Pot lid, pot lid... Here it is. Whoa! Rice everywhere. That kitchen wasn't really big enough for two people.

Then Kate asked me for the phone. Phone? I thought I would be all right. I told her I didn't really need a doctor. She said she was calling for dinner. Oh. That made me feel better.

Scene 1 Not Enough Room

Kate: Oh, it's great to be home. What a day!

Jim: Yeah. As soon as I get these suitcases in here, I'll feel better.

Kate: Oh, why don't we go straight to bed?

Jim: Wait. We're forgetting something. We haven't eaten dinner yet. I'll just see what's in the ref...

Kate: OK, OK, I'll make us some dinner. You just take these bags to the bedroom. This one, and this one, and don't forget this big one. I can't move with all this stuff in here. There. That's better. Take your time, Jim.

Kate: Oh! You scared me. Here. Fill this. Now. Rice... Where's that pot?

Jim: Ow!

Kate: Jim, I'm sorry. You shouldn't stand there.

Kate: Why don't you just get me the lid?

Jim: Is it down there?

Kate: Yeah, it's under there. What... what are you doing?

Jim: I'm just getting the lid. OK. Pot lid, pot lid, pot lid. Here it is.

Kate: Oh, Jim, your head!

Jim: Your elbow!

Kate: The rice!

Jim: Your elbow!

Kate: Hand me the... hand me the phone. The phone, I need to make a phone call.

Jim: OK... Are you calling the doctor for my head? I think it'll be all right.

Kate: No, I'm calling the Chinese restaurant.

Jim: Oh.

Kate: Let them make dinner.

Scene 1 Not Enough Room

They're back in their own apartment, after 12 hours of traveling. Now what? Kate wants to go to bed. She's exhausted. But Jim would like something to eat. It's way past dinnertime. But Jim, you can't even get the refrigerator door open.

You need to get those bags out of the way. That's right, Kate. Load him up. He can put those in the bedroom while you fix dinner. So, Kate, what is for dinner?

Kate's pretty good in the kitchen. She can work fast, if no one's in her way. But it's hard to stay out of the way in that kitchen. There are only a few places to stand. Oh! That's not one of them.

That sort of thing can discourage a man from wanting to help. But Jim doesn't give up easily. If Kate wants a pot lid, he'll... get to the cupboard and... get that pot lid. On the other hand, sometimes you should give up.

Kate has given up. She doesn't want the pot lid anymore; she just wants the phone. She wants to call for help. Help with what? Help with the dinner. Not help for Jim.

Scene 2 A Carryout Dinner

That had to be our dinner. Hello! Come in. This was much better than cooking. Eighteen dollars? Jim? Yes, everything was there, including the rice. Jim paid the man, and we were ready to eat.

I enjoyed the food. Finally, I had had enough. I was ready to turn off the video and go to bed, but the remote wouldn't work. Jim was sure he could make it work. But you can't make it work if it's the wrong remote.

The right one was somewhere in our messy apartment. Jim tried to help. Here. Here it... We didn't even have room to walk. Our apartment was just too small.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Jim was putting his clothes in the dresser drawer. He said he'd run out of room. There's always room for more, I told him, and I was right. Too bad we don't have room in our bedroom for another dresser. Hey, what are you doing? You can't fit back here. These shirts? Here.

We both had things to hang in the closet, but Jim got there first. He didn't think there was room for his shirts. Find room, I told him. He did, but then there wasn't any room left for mine. Find room? Very funny. Jim had left his dirty clothes on the floor. He said there was no other place for them.

Continued

Scene 2 A Carryout Dinner

By the time the doorbell rang, we were both ready to eat. The delivery man handed Kate the bag. "Eighteen dollars," he said. Kate looked at me. Oh, right. I got out my wallet and gave him \$20. "Keep the change," I said.

We sat on the floor to eat our Chinese food. It was delicious, but Kate didn't finish hers. She just wanted to go to bed. She tried to turn the TV off. "Give me the remote," I said. "It's not that hard." Then I realized it was the wrong remote. No wonder.

Kate was already looking for the right one. "Over there," I said. On the way back, Kate tripped over something on the floor. Was she OK? No, she was upset. She said our apartment was too small for all that stuff.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

We had to unpack before we could go to bed. There wasn't room in the drawer for my clothes. Kate told me to find room. OK. I managed to fit them in and get the drawer closed. Excuse me, Kate, I need to get my shirts. Yeah... yeah, those shirts. Now, where to put them?

There wasn't room in the closet, either. I know, I know, find room. All right. Then Kate said there was no room to hang her clothes. Find room, I told her. She didn't like that. Nor did she like tripping on my dirty clothes. Where else could I put them? I was just finding room.

Continued

Scene 2 A Carryout Dinner

Kate: I'll get it... Hello! Why don't you come in?
 Delivery Man: Here's your food. That'll be 18 dollars.
 Kate: Jim?
 Jim: Oh... I'll get it. Let's see... 15... 20. There we go, keep the change.
 Kate: Everything's here. Thanks!
 Delivery Man: Thanks.

Kate: Mmm. Delicious!
 Jim: That was a good show.
 Kate: I've had enough. I'm exhausted. Where's the remote? OK. Off... off! It doesn't work.
 Jim: Give me the remote. It's not that hard.
 Kate: Well, it's the wrong remote.

Kate: Where... where is it? I know it's around here someplace.
 Jim: I think it's over there.
 Kate: Here. Here it is... I can't walk!
 Jim: I'm sorry.
 Kate: It's because of all the stuff in here. This apartment is just too small.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Jim: There's no more room in that drawer.
 Kate: Find room. Just... push.
 Jim: Push. All right. I just don't want to break the drawer.
 Kate: You won't.
 Jim: Push. All right. Excuse me, Kate.
 Kate: Hey, what are you doing?
 Jim: I need to get to my shirts.
 Kate: These shirts?
 Jim: Yeah, yeah, those shirts.

Jim: Now where can I put them?
 Kate: Put them right in the closet.
 Jim: There's no room in the closet.
 Kate: Just... find room. You can do it. There. Now there's no room for mine!
 Jim: Find room.

Continued

Scene 2 A Carryout Dinner

What could be more pleasant than dinner arriving at your door? The wonderful smells, the rice cooked by someone else... but then you do have to pay for it. Jim is happy to pay. It doesn't look like dinner is going to cause him any further injuries.

Mmm. That dinner was delicious. But they're exhausted. Kate wants to turn off the video, but she's having trouble with the remote control. So is Jim.

Kate knows the right remote is somewhere under all this stuff. So does Jim. Ouch! Kate isn't happy. She thinks their apartment is too small for all this stuff.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

They'd rather go to sleep than unpack. But there's a gigantic suitcase in the middle of the bed. It has to be emptied. There isn't enough drawer space. There isn't enough floor space.

And when they try to hang up their clothes, there isn't enough closet space, either. Who knows where they'll put that gigantic suitcase when they finally unpack it? Not in there. Jim sees the humorous side. Kate doesn't. Nor does she see the dirty clothes Jim has thrown all over the floor. I guess there isn't enough space for those, either.

Continued

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Continued

We needed to do something. Jim thought we could solve our problems with a trip to the laundromat. I told him we needed to find a new apartment.

Scene 4 Finding an Apartment

The next day, Jim and I each took a section of the paper and looked for apartments. Oh! There was a great one! I showed Jim—\$900 a month, two bedrooms—it was perfect. Jim got the phone. It's 432-90...

Hi, I'm Kate Harris, and this is my husband, Jim. The landlord told us to look around the apartment and come see him in the kitchen if we had any questions.

I loved the living room. There was so much room! I saw where the couch should go, and I asked Jim to measure. It would fit! Jim said something about putting his old chair under the chandelier. But of course, that was our dining area.

Then Jim had another idea. He showed me where he wanted to put the TV. OK. But then he started talking about his chair again. No! Not that chair!

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Continued

"You know what we're doing tomorrow?" she asked. Yeah, we're going to the laundromat. "No," she said. "We're going to find a new apartment."

Scene 4 Finding an Apartment

We started looking through the newspaper early the next morning. I didn't see any ads I liked, but Kate found something. This apartment was almost twice the size of ours, and the rent was only a little more. We thought we should call the landlord right away.

At the apartment, Kate and I introduced ourselves to the landlord. He told us to feel free to look around. He'd be available if we had any questions.

We headed for the living room. Kate liked how big it was. Yeah, we could definitely put a couch in there and a lot of chairs besides. Kate thought the couch would fit in front of the window. I measured, and it would. I told Kate I had an idea for the other window, a certain chair... But she didn't think so.

Then I saw another possibility for the chair. "Look, Kate," I said. "The television can go there, and we'll put my comfortable old chair here. That way it'll be convenient for watching TV." Maybe Kate didn't like my chair.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Continued

Kate: Ha, ha. Very funny. Oh! What are your dirty clothes doing on the floor?

Jim: I was just finding room for them, Honey.

Kate: Aha. You know what we're going to do tomorrow?

Jim: Yeah, we're going to the laundromat.

Kate: No. We're going to find a new apartment.

Scene 4 Finding an Apartment

Jim: Nothing. I don't see anything here at all.

Kate: Oh! Here's a great one—\$900 a month, two bedrooms.

Jim: That's perfect for us.

Kate: Get the phone. It's 432-90...

Kate: Hi, I'm Kate Harris and this is my husband, Jim.

Jim: Hello.

Landlord: Go ahead and look around. I'll be right here.

Jim: All right. Thank you.

Kate: Oh, Jim, think what we can do with this room! The couch could go here.

Jim: The couch!

Kate: Right here, yeah.

Jim: That will work. And I've got an idea for over there.

Kate: What's that?

Jim: Oh, a certain chair...

Kate: But that's the dining area!

Kate: So much room!

Jim: Yeah! Look, Kate, the television can go there...

Kate: Good!

Jim: ... and we'll put my comfortable old chair here.

That way it'll be convenient for watching TV.

Kate: No, Sweetie. Not that ugly chair.

Scene 3 Difficulty Unpacking

Continued

Clearly, it's time to do something. What do you do when your apartment is just too small? You get a new one.

Scene 4 Finding an Apartment

The first part is easy. They only have to look in the paper. Who will find their dream apartment first? Ah. Kate. It's big, and the price is reasonable. Next, they have to call the landlord and make an appointment to see the apartment.

When they arrive, they introduce themselves, and the landlord invites them to look around. He'll be in the kitchen if they have any questions.

Kate is thinking about space. She wants to be sure there's a place for everything. Will the sofa fit under the window? Good thing Jim brought his tape measure. Jim imagines his old chair under the chandelier. Kate says that's the dining area.

On the other side of the living room, Jim shows Kate where the TV can be. And how about this? He tells Kate he'd like to put his old chair... right here! No.

Scene 5 Big Kitchen, Small Ledge

The kitchen was beautiful and modern. I could see us both in here, cooking happily. Jim liked the size of the counters. I liked the twin sinks, and I checked the faucets.

“Come on, Jim,” I said. “Let’s look at the cabinets.” They were good-looking, and a good size, too. Now the stove... Oh! I burned Jim! I took him to the refrigerator for some ice. Nice refrigerator. I told Jim he’d be all right.

The bathroom had a nice big mirror, and I checked it out. In the meantime, Jim tested the toilet. He told me it worked. There would be plenty of room for all my cosmetics around the sink and in the drawers. Jim’s things? They could go on the ledge. He didn’t like that. “Great shower,” I said. He agreed, but he didn’t like that ledge.

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

We were delighted with the size of the master bedroom. The closet wasn’t bad either. Jim started measuring, and we found a spot for the bed. Then Jim got excited and pulled me to the other side of the room. Here. Chair. There. Television. “No,” I said. “No chair.”

Then we went to the second bedroom. I thought it would make a great office. I could just see my desk against that wall. It would be perfect!

Scene 5 Big Kitchen, Small Ledge

The kitchen was big. We could both cook in there. According to my measurements, we could practically sleep in there. Both of the faucets worked.

Then Kate had to show me the cabinets... and she was careful not to hit me this time. And the stove... Ow! That was hot! “Quick,” said Kate, “let’s get some ice.” She put some ice in my hand. Ow! That was cold!

The bathroom was OK, but my hand was frozen. I checked the toilet by putting the ice in and flushing. “It works,” I told Kate. She was more concerned about counter space. Well, it was big. And that drawer would hold a lot of our things. Her things, she said. My things would go on the ledge. “This ledge?” I asked her. Yeah, the shower was nice, but that ledge?

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Oh, the bedroom was big. Kate checked the closet right away. Plenty of room in there! I got out my tape measure and showed Kate where our bed could go. And over there was the perfect place for my old chair! I showed Kate how it would fit: right here, across from the bed. “What’s the matter with my chair?”

Kate had plans for the second bedroom. It was going to be her office, and she had already decided where everything would go. Her desk would look good there.

Scene 5 Big Kitchen, Small Ledge

Kate: Oh, this is a great kitchen, Jim! We can easily cook together in here.
Jim: Not bad. I'll just measure this counter.
Kate: The faucets work.

Kate: Come on, Jim. Let's look at the cabinets. Oh, there's so much room in there! The stove is gas...
Jim: Ow!
Kate: I burned you! Quick, let's get some ice.
Jim: Are you sure about this?
Kate: Oh. Nice refrigerator. You'll be OK.

Kate: The bathroom's got a good mirror.
Jim: The toilet looks OK.
Kate: That's important.
Jim: It works.
Kate: It does! I love all this space around the sink. And there are lots of drawers.
Jim: Plenty of room for our things.
Kate: Uh, my things. How about that ledge for your things?
Jim: This ledge?
Kate: Oh, look at that great shower.
Jim: Yeah, nice. But... but that ledge!

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Jim: Oh, nothing wrong with the bedroom.
Kate: It's so spacious. The closet is big, too.
Jim: All right, let's see if the bed will fit.
Kate: Perfect!
Jim: Good. And, and... What about this, Kate? I have an idea. Here. Chair. There. Television.
Kate: No chair.
Jim: What's the matter with my chair?

Kate: Oh, Jim! This is going to be my office. The file cabinets will go here; the desk will go over there.
Jim: That'll look good.
Kate: I like it. My own...

Scene 5 Big Kitchen, Small Ledge

This is a kitchen for two people. I can just see Kate and Jim cooking together here—Kate happily chopping and stirring, Jim hunting for pot lids. Kate is pleased with the sinks.

And she likes the cabinet space. The stove looks... Oh! I suppose a big kitchen can be just as dangerous as a small one. Is the ice helping, Jim?

Kate knows you need a good bathroom mirror. And Jim knows you need a place to get rid of the ice. But you also need places to put things. Kate doesn't think there's a problem. The counter and drawers will hold her things nicely. Jim may have a problem fitting all of his stuff on that ledge. The shower's big, but the ledge looks mighty narrow.

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Jim and Kate are happy with this bedroom. No more arguing over closet space. There's even room for another dresser in here. I think separate dressers are good for a marriage. Uh-oh. What's happening here? The chair again? I don't think that chair is good for this marriage.

Here we are in the office. Kate's office, that is. She knows where her file cabinets are going to be, and her desk... When did you decide all that, Kate?

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Continued

Jim had something to show me. He opened the curtains, and there was a lovely little yard. He was thinking about a garden, or maybe a dog. A dog? Think about a cat, I told Jim. He was also thinking about a swingset for our kids. Kids? I wasn't so sure about that.

Scene 7 Negotiating the Lease

When we got back to the landlord we both had questions. I let Jim go first. "That's a great yard," said Jim. "Could we have a garden?" "Sure," said the landlord. And a dog? "A cat," I said. "Either," he said. "Kids," said Jim. "Can we have kids?" I thought it was time we discussed the lease.

Before we signed the lease, I wanted to make sure the monthly rent was still \$900. It was. And the security deposit? One month's rent. That's fine. Then I asked who paid the utilities. The landlord said he did, except for the electric. He would pay the heat and hot water, because they both were gas.

I had one more question. Was there a storage unit? Yeah, in the basement. Jim wondered what we needed to store. Your old chair. All right. Everything sounded good. I signed the lease. Katherine Harris. And so did Jim. Now I just had to keep him out of the basement.

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Continued

But I had plans, too. "Look at that gorgeous yard out there," I said. "We could put a garden there, or plant flowers, or we could get a dog." "A cat," said Kate. Kate likes cats? "Or when we have children," I continued, "they could play there." Hey, what did I say?

Scene 7 Negotiating the Lease

The landlord was waiting for us in the kitchen. I told him I had a few questions. For one thing, could we put a garden out back? Why not? And could we have a dog? "Could we have a cat?" said Kate. The landlord said either one would be fine. But when I wanted to talk about children, Kate wanted to talk about the lease.

"Here it is," said the landlord. "All ready for you to sign." Kate asked him if the rent was still \$900 a month. Yes, and the security deposit was one month's rent. Sounds good. Kate asked who paid the utilities. "I pay for gas and water," he said. "You pay the electric bill." And hot water? "That's gas," he said, "so I pay."

Then Kate asked if there was any storage. Yes, in the basement. "Wait a minute," I said. "Why do we need storage?" Kate said it was for my chair. My chair? My old chair? Kate was happy now, and was ready to sign the lease. I was ready to sign too, but I wasn't going to sign anything about my chair.

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Continued

Jim: Kate, come here. Look at that gorgeous yard out there. We could put a garden there, or plant flowers, or we could get a dog.

Kate: No, a cat.

Jim: A cat? Or when we have children, they could play there. I'll put a swingset in.

Kate: Honey, the landlord's waiting.

Scene 7 Negotiating the Lease

Landlord: What do you think?

Kate: We like it, but my husband has some questions.

Jim: That's a great yard. Can we have a garden?

Landlord: Sure.

Kate: Oh, good.

Jim: And a dog?

Kate: A cat.

Landlord: Either one would be fine.

Jim: Kids. Can we have kids?

Kate: I think we need to talk about the lease.

Landlord: Here it is. All ready for you to sign.

Kate: Is the rent still \$900 a month?

Landlord: Yes.

Kate: And the security deposit?

Landlord: One month's rent.

Jim: How long is the lease?

Landlord: It's a year.

Kate: Who pays the utilities?

Landlord: I pay for gas and water. You pay the electric bill.

Jim: And hot water?

Landlord: That's gas, so I pay.

Kate: You do have storage, don't you?

Landlord: Yes. It's in the basement.

Jim: Wait a minute. Why do we need storage?

Kate: For your old chair... We'll take it.

Landlord: All right. I have a pen right here.

Kate: And can we move in at the end of the month?

Landlord: That'll be fine.

Kate: We're looking forward to it.

Jim: I'll just put my chair in the back yard.

Scene 6 Two Bedrooms and a Yard

Continued

Jim shows Kate the yard. You can do a lot with a yard like that—grow vegetables or flowers, or have a dog.

Or a cat. And if you have children, you can put a swingset out there for them to play on. Did Jim say the wrong thing?

Scene 7 Negotiating the Lease

The landlord has a copy of the lease in his hand. He's ready for them to sign it. But first, Jim wants to know more about the yard. The landlord agrees to everything. They can put in a garden if they like. They can have a dog, or a cat, or both. Jim says they might like to have kids. I think he said the wrong thing again.

Now it's Kate's turn to ask questions. She goes over every financial detail with the landlord—the amount of the rent, the amount of the security deposit, and who pays which utilities. The landlord answers all her questions. Finally, everything seems to be settled. But Kate still isn't ready to sign.

She has to know if there's any storage. In the basement, the landlord replies. Storage? Is that your idea for where to put Jim's chair? Well, the lease is settled. Kate signs it, and Jim signs it too. But I don't believe the question of that chair is settled at all.

Questions

Scene 1 – Not Enough Room

- Where do Jim and Kate arrive at the beginning of the scene?
 - at their friend's house
 - at a hotel
 - at their apartment
 - at a Chinese restaurant
- How did Jim and Kate get to their apartment?
 - They don't say.
 - They walked.
 - They came on a bus.
 - They came in a rental car.
- Kate feels
 - sorry that their trip is over
 - excited
 - hungry
 - exhausted
- What time did Jim and Kate start traveling that morning?
 - 9:30
 - 8:30
 - 5:30
 - 12:00
- What does Kate want to do as soon as they get home?
 - go to bed
 - watch TV
 - eat dinner
 - unpack
- What does Jim want to do as soon as they get home?
 - call the restaurant
 - take the suitcases out of the kitchen
 - go to bed
 - eat something
- What does Kate tell Jim to do while she starts cooking dinner?
 - turn on the TV
 - get out the rice
 - carry their bags to the bedroom
 - look in the fridge
- Jim and Kate's kitchen is
 - roomy
 - a good place for suitcases
 - big enough for two people
 - small
- Why does Kate want Jim to take the bags to the bedroom?
 - She needs something that is in one of the bags.
 - She can't get the door open.
 - She can't move with the bags in the kitchen.
 - She doesn't like looking at the bags.
- What does Jim want to do when he comes back to the kitchen?
 - get the rest of the bags
 - help Kate fix dinner
 - watch Kate cook
 - ask Kate what they are going to eat
- When Kate works in the kitchen, she is
 - angry
 - happy
 - fast
 - slow
- How does Kate react when Jim stands near her?
 - She doesn't notice him.
 - She becomes frightened.
 - She becomes angry.
 - She is happy to see him.
- Why does Jim get hurt?
 - He is standing in the wrong place.
 - The stove is too hot.
 - The bags are in the way.
 - He bumps into Kate.
- What does Kate ask Jim to get, and from where?
 - the pot lid from the upper cabinet
 - the rice from the lower cabinet
 - the sauce from the fridge
 - the pot lid from the lower cabinet
- What does Kate spill on the counter?
 - peanuts
 - rice
 - water
 - nothing
- How much rice had Kate measured out?
 - one pint
 - one tablespoon
 - one cup
 - a handful
- Why does Jim think Kate wants the phone?
 - to call a doctor about his head
 - to call a friend and ask about her rice recipe
 - to call their landlord and complain about how small the apartment is
 - to call a Chinese restaurant and order food

18. Why does Kate actually want to use the phone?
 - a) to call a Chinese restaurant and order more rice
 - b) to call a Chinese restaurant and order dinner
 - c) to call their landlord and ask him to order dinner
 - d) to call a friend and ask about her rice recipe
19. Why does Kate order dinner from the Chinese restaurant?
 - a) She is too tired and frustrated to cook.
 - b) There isn't any food in the house.
 - c) Jim prefers Chinese food.
 - d) Jim says Chinese food will make his head feel better.
20. How does Jim feel when he learns that Kate is calling out for dinner?
 - a) angry
 - b) worse
 - c) exhausted
 - d) better

Scene 2 – A Carryout Dinner

1. At the beginning of this scene, Jim and Kate are expecting
 - a) a phone call
 - b) dinner
 - c) a friend
 - d) the doctor
2. How does the delivery man let Jim and Kate know that he is there?
 - a) He calls them on the phone.
 - b) He knocks on the door.
 - c) He rings the doorbell.
 - d) He walks in the door.
3. What does Kate tell the delivery man to do when she opens the door?
 - a) leave the food on the porch
 - b) come in
 - c) give her a receipt
 - d) hand her the food
4. What is the first thing the delivery man does when he arrives?
 - a) He gives Kate the food.
 - b) He keeps the change.
 - c) He asks to be paid.
 - d) He comments on how small the kitchen is.
5. What does Kate want Jim to do?
 - a) carry the food into the living room
 - b) make sure all the food is there
 - c) close the door
 - d) pay the delivery man
6. Where does Jim get the money to pay the delivery man?
 - a) from the counter
 - b) from Kate
 - c) from his wallet
 - d) from his shirt pocket
7. How much does the food cost?
 - a) less than \$20
 - b) \$20
 - c) more than \$20
 - d) We don't know.
8. How much of a tip does Jim give the delivery man?
 - a) \$18
 - b) \$20
 - c) \$2
 - d) none
9. How does Jim feel about paying for the food?
 - a) He thinks the tip is too large.
 - b) He thinks the meal is too expensive.
 - c) He thinks Kate should pay.
 - d) He is happy to do it.
10. Why does Kate look in the bag when she first gets it?
 - a) to see what kind of food she ordered
 - b) to make sure all the food is there
 - c) to make sure they are not being charged too much
 - d) to see what smells so good
11. What is definitely in the bag?
 - a) napkins
 - b) forks
 - c) salt
 - d) rice
12. Where do Jim and Kate eat their dinner?
 - a) in the bedroom
 - b) in the kitchen
 - c) at the table
 - d) on the floor
13. What do Jim and Kate do while they are eating their dinner?
 - a) watch a video
 - b) unpack
 - c) look for the remote
 - d) talk about their trip
14. Why doesn't Kate finish her food?
 - a) She doesn't like rice.
 - b) She is too tired to eat any more.
 - c) She ate too many airline peanuts.
 - d) She wants to watch the video.

15. What does Kate try to do before she gets up?
 - a) rewind the video
 - b) finish her food
 - c) turn off the TV
 - d) put her food away
16. Why can't Kate and Jim turn off the TV with their remote?
 - a) They have the wrong remote.
 - b) The remote doesn't work.
 - c) They don't know how to use the remote.
 - d) The TV is broken.
17. Where is the right remote?
 - a) on the couch
 - b) behind the television
 - c) in the kitchen
 - d) across the room
18. Why does Kate fall when she is bringing back the remote?
 - a) She is too tired to walk any further.
 - b) She trips over something on the floor.
 - c) She trips over Jim.
 - d) We don't know.
19. How does Kate feel after she falls down?
 - a) hungry
 - b) OK
 - c) confused
 - d) upset
20. Why is Kate upset?
 - a) She thinks the apartment is too small.
 - b) She thinks the remote should be kept in a better place.
 - c) She thinks the remote is broken.
 - d) She is feeling ill from the food.
3. Why do Jim and Kate have to unpack before they can go to bed?
 - a) They need to find their toothbrushes.
 - b) There's a big suitcase on their bed.
 - c) They hate to go to bed in a messy house.
 - d) They need to find their pajamas.
4. Where are Jim and Kate going to put the suitcase when they finish unpacking it?
 - a) under the bed
 - b) on top of the dresser
 - c) We don't know.
 - d) in the closet
5. Where does Jim first put his clothes?
 - a) on the floor
 - b) in a dresser drawer
 - c) in the closet
 - d) on the bed
6. What does Kate tell Jim to do when he says there is no room in the drawer?
 - a) Put the clothes in the closet.
 - b) Put the clothes on the floor.
 - c) Leave the clothes in the suitcase.
 - d) Find room.
7. Why isn't there a second dresser in the bedroom?
 - a) There isn't room for another dresser.
 - b) Jim and Kate can't afford another dresser.
 - c) Jim and Kate like to use the same dresser.
 - d) Jim and Kate don't need another dresser.
8. What does Jim think might happen if he pushes his clothes into the drawer?
 - a) He might run out of room.
 - b) He might not be able to close the drawer.
 - c) He might hurt himself.
 - d) The drawer might break.

Scene 3 – Difficulty Unpacking

1. How are Jim and Kate feeling at the beginning of this scene?
 - a) confused
 - b) cheerful
 - c) tired
 - d) afraid
2. What do Jim and Kate have to do before they can go to bed?
 - a) finish watching the video
 - b) make their bed
 - c) clean up the kitchen
 - d) unpack
9. How does Jim get his shirts?
 - a) He picks them up off the floor.
 - b) He takes them out of the drawer.
 - c) Kate hands them to him.
 - d) He gets them from the suitcase.
10. Where do both Jim and Kate want to put their clothes?
 - a) on the floor
 - b) in the closet
 - c) in the suitcase
 - d) in the drawer

11. Why is there no room in the closet for Kate's shirts?
 - a) because Kate has too many shirts
 - b) because Jim got there first with his shirts
 - c) because Kate's shirts are too big
 - d) because Jim and Kate didn't put enough clothes in the dresser
12. What does Jim tell Kate when she complains that there is no room in the closet?
 - a) He tells her to take her clothes to the living room.
 - b) He tells her that he will hang her clothes up for her.
 - c) He tells her to put her clothes in the drawer.
 - d) He tells her to find room.
13. How does Kate react when Jim tells her to find room?
 - a) She doesn't hear Jim.
 - b) She says that it's not funny.
 - c) She says that it's funny, but she doesn't think it is.
 - d) She tells Jim not to make jokes.
14. Why does Kate stumble and almost fall down?
 - a) We don't know.
 - b) She trips over an open drawer.
 - c) She trips over Jim.
 - d) She trips over Jim's clothes.
15. How are the clothes on the floor different from Jim's other clothes?
 - a) They are dirty.
 - b) They are his old clothes.
 - c) They are his good clothes.
 - d) They are his sports clothes.
16. Why did Jim leave his dirty clothes on the floor?
 - a) Jim leaves all his clothes on the floor.
 - b) He couldn't find any other place for them.
 - c) They fell out of his suitcase and he hasn't yet picked them up.
 - d) He thought that's where Kate wanted them.
17. What does Jim expect to do the next day?
 - a) find a new apartment
 - b) finish unpacking
 - c) go to the laundromat
 - d) clean up the house
18. What does Kate want to do the next day?
 - a) find a new apartment
 - b) finish unpacking
 - c) buy a larger dresser
 - d) go shopping for more clothes
19. What word does not describe the way Jim and Kate are feeling at the end of the day?
 - a) exhausted
 - b) upset
 - c) frustrated
 - d) comfortable
20. Which idea never occurs to Jim or Kate?
 - a) to get rid of some of their stuff
 - b) to get a new apartment
 - c) to go to the laundromat
 - d) to find room

Scene 4 – Finding an Apartment

1. When do Jim and Kate start looking for their new apartment?
 - a) the next day after work
 - b) the next morning
 - c) during the next couple of days
 - d) as soon as they finish unpacking
2. How do Jim and Kate start looking for a new apartment?
 - a) They call their friends.
 - b) They search on the Internet.
 - c) They look in the newspaper.
 - d) They look in the phone book.
3. The apartment that Kate likes
 - a) costs more than they are paying now and has two bedrooms
 - b) costs less than they are paying now and has two bedrooms
 - c) costs the same as they are paying now and has two bedrooms
 - d) costs more than they are paying now and has three bedrooms
4. What is wrong with the apartment that Kate likes?
 - a) The apartment is too small.
 - b) The apartment is far from Jim's work.
 - c) There is nothing wrong with the apartment, as far as Kate can see.
 - d) The apartment is too expensive.
5. What is the first thing Kate does after finding an apartment she likes?
 - a) She writes the information down.
 - b) She calls the landlord.
 - c) She starts packing her bags.
 - d) She shows the ad to Jim.

6. What do Jim and Kate do next?
 - a) They keep looking for other apartments.
 - b) They call the landlord to arrange an appointment.
 - c) They look up the landlord's number.
 - d) They drive over to the apartment.
7. What is the first thing Jim and Kate do when they get to the new apartment?
 - a) They introduce themselves to the landlord.
 - b) They start measuring the living room.
 - c) They look around.
 - d) They ask the landlord questions.
8. Where is the landlord going to wait while they examine the apartment?
 - a) in the bedroom
 - b) outside the apartment
 - c) in the living room
 - d) in the kitchen
9. What is the first room that Jim and Kate look at in the apartment?
 - a) the bathroom
 - b) the bedroom
 - c) the kitchen
 - d) the living room
10. What does Kate think about the living room?
 - a) She doesn't react to it.
 - b) She likes it somewhat.
 - c) She loves it.
 - d) She doesn't like it.
11. What does Kate like about the living room?
 - a) the chandelier
 - b) the dining area
 - c) the windows
 - d) its size
12. Where does Kate want to put the couch?
 - a) in front of the television
 - b) under the window
 - c) under the chandelier
 - d) beside the door
13. What does Jim find out with his tape measure?
 - a) The couch will fit where Kate wants it.
 - b) The couch won't fit under the window.
 - c) The window is too small.
 - d) The chandelier is too close to the window.
14. What does Jim want to put under the chandelier?
 - a) the dining-room table
 - b) the couch
 - c) the television
 - d) his old chair
15. What does Kate say should be in the space under the chandelier?
 - a) another couch
 - b) another chair
 - c) the dining area
 - d) the television
16. What two things does Jim want to use together?
 - a) the window and the couch
 - b) the chandelier and the table
 - c) the couch and the TV
 - d) his chair and the TV
17. Why does Jim think his chair and the TV go together?
 - a) The chair is comfortable for watching TV.
 - b) They are the same color.
 - c) They are both small enough to fit in the living room.
 - d) They are together in Jim and Kate's present apartment.
18. How does Kate feel about Jim's chair?
 - a) She thinks Jim should do whatever he wants with his chair.
 - b) She doesn't like it.
 - c) She likes it a lot.
 - d) She likes it, but she doesn't want it in the dining area.
19. What does Kate say about Jim's chair?
 - a) It is old.
 - b) It is too large.
 - c) It is ugly.
 - d) It is not comfortable.
20. Jim and Kate agree on where to put which two pieces of furniture?
 - a) the couch and the chair
 - b) the TV and the chair
 - c) They don't agree about where to put anything.
 - d) the couch and the TV

Scene 5 – Big Kitchen, Small Ledge

1. Where do Kate and Jim go when they leave the living room?
 - a) to the kitchen
 - b) to the bedroom
 - c) to the bathroom
 - d) to the yard

2. What does Kate say she and Jim can do in this kitchen?
 - a) look for pot lids
 - b) measure the counters
 - c) eat dinner
 - d) cook together
3. What does Jim jokingly say he and Kate could do in the kitchen?
 - a) eat
 - b) sleep
 - c) talk
 - d) measure
4. What does Jim measure?
 - a) the refrigerator
 - b) the faucets
 - c) the counters
 - d) the cabinets
5. What does Kate check while Jim is measuring the counters?
 - a) the refrigerator
 - b) the faucets
 - c) the stove
 - d) the cabinets
6. Which of the following is not true about the cabinets?
 - a) They are small.
 - b) They are a nice size.
 - c) They are good-looking.
 - d) Kate likes them.
7. What kind of fuel does the stove use?
 - a) propane
 - b) electricity
 - c) wood
 - d) gas
8. How does Jim get burned?
 - a) He sticks his hand in the flame.
 - b) Kate turns on the stove while his hand is on it.
 - c) He turns on the stove while his hand is on it.
 - d) He puts his hand on the stove while it is still hot.
9. What else happens to Jim when he burns his hand on the stove?
 - a) Nothing else happens to him.
 - b) He trips and falls.
 - c) Kate steps on his foot.
 - d) He bangs his head.
10. What does Kate do when she sees that she burned Jim?
 - a) She grabs the phone to call a doctor.
 - b) She asks the landlord for help.
 - c) She takes him to the refrigerator to get some ice.
 - d) She doesn't notice that Jim is hurt.
11. What does Kate notice while she is getting some ice for Jim?
 - a) that she doesn't like the refrigerator very much
 - b) that Jim's burn is worse than she thought
 - c) that the refrigerator is nice
 - d) that she seems to injure Jim often
12. Where do Jim and Kate go after the kitchen?
 - a) to the yard
 - b) to the living room
 - c) to the bedroom
 - d) to the bathroom
13. How does Jim's hand feel while they are walking into the bathroom?
 - a) It is hot from being burned.
 - b) It is cold from the ice.
 - c) It is hurt from being grabbed by Kate.
 - d) His hand feels just fine.
14. What does Kate look at while Jim is checking the toilet?
 - a) the drawers
 - b) the shower
 - c) the sink
 - d) the mirror
15. What does Kate not check while she is in the bathroom?
 - a) the mirror
 - b) the toilet
 - c) the drawers
 - d) the counter space
16. How does Jim test the toilet?
 - a) He throws in the ice and flushes it down.
 - b) He raises the lid.
 - c) He looks inside.
 - d) He doesn't check the toilet.
17. What does Kate want to put around the sink and in the drawers?
 - a) Jim's things
 - b) her cosmetics
 - c) towels
 - d) She doesn't say.

18. Where does Kate want Jim to put his things?
 - a) in the drawers
 - b) in the shower
 - c) on the ledge
 - d) on the counter
19. What word is not used to describe the shower?
 - a) nice
 - b) great
 - c) big
 - d) beautiful
20. What does Jim think about the ledge?
 - a) He thinks the ledge will hold his things just fine.
 - b) He thinks it's too narrow to hold all of his things.
 - c) He thinks it's too close to the toilet.
 - d) He thinks it's too far from the sink.
6. What does Jim measure in the master bedroom?
 - a) the space where his chair could go
 - b) the space where Kate's desk could go
 - c) the space where the dresser could go
 - d) the space where the bed could go
7. What else does Jim think might fit in the master bedroom?
 - a) his chair and the couch
 - b) the couch and the TV
 - c) his chair and the TV
 - d) his chair, the couch, and the TV
8. Why doesn't the narrator think Jim's chair is good for Jim and Kate's marriage?
 - a) They can't agree on where to put it.
 - b) Neither of them likes it.
 - c) Jim wants to watch television in the chair.
 - d) The chair is old and ugly.

Scene 6 – Two Bedrooms and a Yard

1. Where do Jim and Kate go after the bathroom?
 - a) to the master bedroom
 - b) to the second bedroom
 - c) to the living room
 - d) to the kitchen
2. What is the first thing Jim and Kate notice about the master bedroom?
 - a) where Jim's chair can go
 - b) how large the closet is
 - c) that there is room for the bed
 - d) how big it is
3. What does Kate think about the closet?
 - a) She doesn't like the closet.
 - b) She doesn't say anything about the closet.
 - c) She thinks it is big enough.
 - d) She thinks it would hold another dresser.
4. Why does the narrator say that there will be "no more arguing over closet space"?
 - a) There is room in the bedroom for two dressers.
 - b) The closet in the bedroom is big enough for both Jim and Kate.
 - c) Jim and Kate are going to get rid of some of their clothes.
 - d) There are two closets in the bedroom.
5. What does the narrator think about separate dressers?
 - a) He doesn't say anything about this.
 - b) He thinks that would be a good idea.
 - c) He doesn't think Jim and Kate need two dressers.
 - d) He thinks they would be a waste of space.
9. Where do Jim and Kate go when they leave the master bedroom?
 - a) to the bathroom
 - b) to the living room
 - c) to the kitchen
 - d) to the second bedroom
10. Who is going to use the second bedroom?
 - a) Jim and Kate's children are going to use it.
 - b) Kate is going to use it as an office.
 - c) Jim is going to use it as an office.
 - d) Jim and Kate are going to use it as a spare bedroom.
11. Where does Kate want to put her desk?
 - a) beside the file cabinets
 - b) against the wall
 - c) in the middle of the room
 - d) She doesn't say.
12. Other than her desk, what else does Kate say she wants to put in her office?
 - a) flowers
 - b) curtains
 - c) a cat
 - d) file cabinets
13. After Kate has decided about her furniture, what part of the room does Jim bring her to?
 - a) the window
 - b) the door
 - c) the wall
 - d) the yard

14. What does Jim want to show Kate?
 - a) his chair
 - b) a dog
 - c) the garden
 - d) the yard
15. Which one of these things does Jim not suggest for the yard?
 - a) a cat
 - b) a dog
 - c) a garden
 - d) a swingset
16. What does Kate want to get?
 - a) a swingset
 - b) a dog
 - c) flowers
 - d) a cat
17. Why does Jim want to put a swingset in the backyard?
 - a) It will take the place of his chair.
 - b) He hopes their children will use it someday.
 - c) He wants the dog to play on it.
 - d) It will be part of the garden.
18. What does Kate think about having children?
 - a) She wants to have children as soon as possible.
 - b) She wants to have children, but she doesn't know if Jim does.
 - c) She wants to talk to Jim about it.
 - d) She isn't sure about the idea.
19. What does Jim learn about Kate during this scene?
 - a) that she likes cats
 - b) that she doesn't like working at home
 - c) that she wants to stay in their present apartment
 - d) that she wants to have children
20. What does Kate learn about Jim during this scene?
 - a) that he wants an office at home too
 - b) that he wants to have children
 - c) that he likes cats
 - d) that he wants to put his chair in her office
2. What is the landlord holding when they meet him?
 - a) a floor plan
 - b) the electric bill
 - c) the lease
 - d) the newspaper
3. Who has questions for the landlord?
 - a) both Jim and Kate
 - b) only Jim
 - c) only Kate
 - d) neither Jim nor Kate
4. What does Jim ask the landlord about?
 - a) the lease
 - b) the yard
 - c) the storage unit
 - d) the second bedroom
5. What do Jim and the landlord disagree about?
 - a) having a cat in the yard
 - b) putting a garden in the yard
 - c) having a dog in the yard
 - d) They don't disagree about anything.
6. Which of the following does the landlord not say?
 - a) that children are allowed in the apartment
 - b) that Jim and Kate can have a garden
 - c) that Jim and Kate can have a cat
 - d) that Jim and Kate can have a dog
7. How does Kate react when Jim asks the landlord about kids?
 - a) She asks Jim if he really wants to have kids.
 - b) She wants to talk about something else.
 - c) She doesn't react at all.
 - d) She asks the landlord if kids would be OK.
8. What does Kate want to talk about instead of talking about kids?
 - a) where to put Jim's chair
 - b) storage space
 - c) when they can move in
 - d) the lease
9. What kind of questions does Kate ask before she signs the lease?
 - a) questions about planting flowers
 - b) questions about the key to the apartment
 - c) questions about money
 - d) questions about how to reach the landlord

Scene 7 – Negotiating the Lease

1. Where do Jim and Kate go from the second bedroom?
 - a) to the kitchen
 - b) to the living room
 - c) to the master bedroom
 - d) to the yard

10. Which of the following statements about the rent is true?
a) The rent has gone down to \$800.
b) The rent is still \$800.
c) The rent has gone up to \$900.
d) The rent is still \$900.
11. How much is the security deposit?
a) \$400
b) \$900
c) \$800
d) \$450
12. How long is the lease?
a) 6 months
b) 8 months
c) 12 months
d) 10 months
13. Who pays for the utilities in the apartment?
a) The landlord pays for water and gas, and the tenants pay for electricity.
b) The landlord pays all the utilities.
c) The tenants pay all the utilities.
d) The landlord pays for water and gas, but the tenants pay for hot water.
14. Who pays for the hot water, and why?
a) The landlord doesn't know who pays for the hot water.
b) The landlord pays, because the water is heated with gas.
c) The landlord pays, because he pays the water bill.
d) The tenants pay, because the water is heated with electricity.
15. What is the last thing Kate wants to know before she signs the lease?
a) who pays the utilities
b) how much the rent is
c) how long the lease will last
d) whether there is a storage unit
16. Where is the storage unit?
a) in the basement
b) in the parking garage
c) in the apartment
d) in the backyard
17. What do Jim and Kate agree on?
a) what to do with Jim's old chair
b) whether to move into this apartment
c) whether to have children
d) whether to get a dog or a cat
18. How does the landlord offer to help Kate sign the lease?
a) by providing storage space
b) by paying some of the utilities
c) by giving her a pen
d) by letting them move in early
19. When are Jim and Kate planning to move into their new apartment?
a) after their old lease expires
b) in a few days
c) the next day
d) at the end of the month
20. Where is Jim's chair going to go when Jim and Kate move into their new apartment?
a) We don't know for sure.
b) in the basement
c) in the living room
d) in the bedroom

Narrative Lesson 6-01

Kate's Diary

Sunday, June 17th

At last, it's settled. We have a new and bigger apartment. Jim and I signed the lease this morning. I had been feeling very crowded ever since Jim moved in after the wedding. It was hard to make room for all his stuff. I even had to move my teacup collection off the shelf and put it into a box. Luckily, Jim didn't have any dishes. Now that I think of it, that's kind of strange.

It will be wonderful to have more room. I'm even going to be able to use one of the bedrooms for my writing. I'll put my desk in there, and my file cabinets, and I'm going to buy lots and lots of new bookcases. I'll finally have a place to put all those books I've been storing in boxes.

Now that we have a nice big kitchen, Jim and I can start having real meals. No more sandwiches or carryout or food from cans. I know Jim will want to learn to cook, and then he and I will be able to fix dinner together every night. I'll have to get a bookcase for the kitchen, too, for all my cookbooks. We'll be making a new recipe every night! I wonder if Jim likes lentils. I'm still learning what he likes and doesn't like. Today I found out he doesn't like cats. Imagine that.

Another thing I want to do is paint the whole apartment in more interesting colors. White is so boring. I forgot to ask the landlord about this, but I'm sure he won't mind. I think the entryway would look beautiful painted in a vibrant purple. And I can just see the walls of our bedroom in soft pea green, accented by a few orange stripes. Jim has a pair of socks in those colors, and I think it's a beautiful combination. He probably doesn't realize I noticed those socks. I think Jim's creativity is one of his most endearing qualities.

Our new bedroom is big enough to hold a chair, a small table, and a reading lamp. My rocking chair will fit perfectly. It will be pleasant to sit there and read, sipping tea and holding our new cat in my lap. But first I'll have to convince Jim that having a cat is a good idea. What if we called the cat Homer? Jim would like that, since he's a baseball fan. It's also the name of one of my favorite authors.

I hope Jim understands that we simply can't have his old chair in the apartment. It takes up a lot of room, and it looks bad. There are stains all over it. Some look like ketchup and mustard, and one might even be avocado. Did Jim eat his meals in that chair?

I would be glad to let him use my rocking chair. It may not be as soft as his chair, but it's much better looking.

On our way to the new apartment, I saw a lot of children playing in the neighborhood. That will make Jim happy. He likes children. We might even want to have children of our own someday. But I'll have to figure out how to manage children and my writing at the same time. I don't know how well I could concentrate with a crying baby in the house. Of course, I could write about my children. I love to read about other people's children.

It's been a busy day. I'd like to have a cup of tea right now, and I would do that if I just knew where my teacups were. I miss them. After we get unpacked in the new place, I'll put all my teacups on the top shelf of the bookcase in the kitchen. And then every day, when Jim comes home from work, I'll give him tea in a different cup. Maybe he'll learn to like tea, too.

It's hard to believe that only yesterday we were losing things and tripping over clothes because of the stuff that was piled everywhere. Everything's going to have its proper place now. The remotes will be on the end table, Jim's clothes will be in his old dresser, and my cosmetics and lotions will be on the bathroom counter and in the drawers. And Jim's old chair will be in the basement. I think he mentioned something to me about possibly putting it in the yard. Can he have been serious? Maybe Jim is more attached to that chair than I realized.

Questions

- Which of the following does Kate not like?
 - cooking
 - teacups
 - white walls
 - books
- Which of the following can be inferred from the fifth paragraph?
 - Kate enjoys reading.
 - Jim wants to have a cat.
 - Jim's chair will be in the bedroom.
 - The bedroom will be crowded.
- The expression "real meals" means meals that
 - Jim helps to make
 - both Jim and Kate like
 - contain lentils
 - require cooking

Narrative Lesson 6-02

4. Kate objects to Jim's chair because of its
 - a) hardness and appearance
 - b) size and age
 - c) age and color
 - d) size and appearance
5. Kate implies that being a writer may be difficult if
 - a) Jim's chair is in the house
 - b) she has children
 - c) she does not have an office
 - d) she does not have enough bookcases
6. The last paragraph suggests that Kate believes
 - a) the new apartment will be more organized than the old one
 - b) Jim will put his old chair in the yard
 - c) Jim does not care where his chair is
 - d) the bathroom will not have enough storage space
7. The purpose of the fourth paragraph is to describe
 - a) the entryway of the new apartment
 - b) Kate's ideas about decorating
 - c) the bedroom of the new apartment
 - d) a pair of Jim's socks
8. It can be inferred from the text that Kate
 - a) is looking forward to living in the new apartment
 - b) is not interested in children
 - c) is satisfied with the way the new apartment looks
 - d) knows where to find everything in her present apartment
9. Kate would like the new cat's name to be
 - a) agreeable to Jim
 - b) the name of a baseball player
 - c) Jim's idea
 - d) the name of a book
10. The word "endearing," as used in the fourth paragraph, most nearly means
 - a) talented
 - b) handsome
 - c) lovable
 - d) colorful

Jim's Diary

Monday, June 17th

Our apartment was a mess last night. There was no place to put anything. Things were piled everywhere—on the furniture and on the floor. The bedroom was full of the suitcases and bags we had brought home from our trip. The living room was piled with boxes of my stuff that I had brought when I moved in with Kate after the wedding.

One of those boxes has my sock collection in it. I don't believe in collecting useless things like baseball cards, but socks are something you can use, and they don't cost much. So I have a big collection. They took up a whole drawer in my old dresser, but now I'm not sure where they are. I miss them. I would have worn my red plaid socks today if I had just known where to find them.

Today was a special day, because it was the day we found our new apartment. When Kate said last night that we needed a bigger apartment, I agreed with her. For one thing, if we had a bigger place I might be able to get my comfortable old chair out of storage. That's one thing I won't give up. Kate's chairs are nice looking, but they're not that comfortable.

We looked at the newspaper ads this morning and went to see the place that sounded the best. It had everything we wanted, so we signed the lease. I liked the neighborhood, too. I noticed that there was a coffee shop not too far away from our apartment.

Coffee shops are good places to meet interesting people. In a coffee shop near my old apartment, I once met an artist. He was quite creative and imaginative. He showed me some sketches he had been doing of various ditches in the area and the flowers that grew in them. I just happened to be wearing my pea-green socks with the orange stripes, and I showed him those.

The new apartment is much bigger than our present one. It even has something called a dining area. In my old apartment, I usually dined standing at the kitchen counter. Kate and I have also dined on the floor a lot. I wonder what it will be like to dine in a special area. We'll probably need to get a table, for one thing. And maybe some special dishes. Maybe I'll get some special socks.

Even though the new apartment has more room, I still haven't been able to find a place for my old chair.

Kate didn't like any of the places I suggested for it. In fact, she wants to put it back in storage. Kate doesn't understand about that chair. That's the chair I watch the World Series in every year. That's the chair I take naps in. It's also a very good dining area. That reminds me—the kitchen's pretty big. Maybe I can put my chair in there.

Kate says she wants a big kitchen so there's room for us to cook together. That's another thing she doesn't understand. I don't know how to cook. I barely know how to shop. I usually just buy canned food. It makes sense—the food in the can is already cooked, so I don't have to bother. With a little imagination you can put together some great sandwiches. One of my favorites is avocado, peanut butter, and potato chips on a whole-wheat bun. No cooking necessary.

I think it's important to have a big bathroom, mostly so there are enough places to put things. Kate has a lot of things, but so do I. There are all those vitamins I take in case I'm not eating enough vegetables. I also need to keep a few grooming tools in the bathroom. Then there are my socks. One of those drawers in the bathroom might be just the place for them. Kate says she needs all the drawers, but she can't have that many cosmetics.

The thing I like best about our new apartment is the yard. It has great possibilities. I might want to plant some vegetables there. I'm sure if I grew them, Kate wouldn't mind cooking them. The yard will also be a good place for our children to play someday. I'm imagining all sorts of play equipment that we could put out there for them. And when my chair gets really old and worn out, we'll put it in the yard and they can play on that.

Questions

1. Jim likes all of the following about the new apartment except
 - a) the place Kate found for his chair
 - b) the neighborhood
 - c) the yard
 - d) the apartment's size
2. In the first paragraph, Jim describes his and Kate's apartment as
 - a) in need of repairs
 - b) without furnishings
 - c) carefully arranged
 - d) badly organized
3. Which of the following best describes the ideas in this text?
 - a) opinions only
 - b) facts only
 - c) facts and opinions
 - d) no facts and no opinions
4. Jim thinks of his sock collection as
 - a) expensive
 - b) small
 - c) unimportant
 - d) useful
5. Which of the following cannot be inferred from the text?
 - a) Jim is not used to eating at a table.
 - b) Jim will keep his sock collection in a bathroom drawer.
 - c) Jim is interested in people.
 - d) Jim likes his chair better than Kate's chairs.
6. Jim's attitude toward the dining area in the new apartment can best be described as
 - a) worried
 - b) unhappy
 - c) curious
 - d) excited
7. Why did Jim think that the day he wrote in the diary was a special day?
 - a) He and Kate did something they needed to do.
 - b) He and Kate agreed on something.
 - c) He got his chair out of storage.
 - d) He found a nice-looking chair.
8. Jim's feelings about his chair are most similar to his feelings about
 - a) his and Kate's present apartment
 - b) his sock collection
 - c) vegetables
 - d) cooking
9. Which statement best summarizes the seventh paragraph?
 - a) The new apartment is too small for Jim's chair.
 - b) Kate doesn't know where to put Jim's chair.
 - c) Jim is concerned about finding a place for his chair.
 - d) The kitchen is the only room big enough for Jim's chair.
10. Jim and Kate agree that
 - a) Jim should put his chair in the kitchen
 - b) they should cook together
 - c) Jim should keep his socks in the bathroom
 - d) they need more space

Narrative Lesson 6-03

The Landlord Speaks of Housing

Location is pretty important when you are choosing a place to live. No house is going to be desirable if it is located next to a garbage dump. But even the smallest house will be attractive if it is on a beautiful beach. Some people say that location is the most important thing about a house. However, I think a decent roof is more important than a good location. If you are rained on because there are holes in your roof, you are liable to get very wet and miserable, no matter where your house is located.

The price of a house or apartment has a lot to do with where it is. When I lived in a small town, I rented a three-bedroom house for \$650 a month. It wasn't a very fancy house, but it kept the rain and snow out, more or less, and it had a garage in the back where my wife and I could park our car. The house was close to my work, and it was in a quiet neighborhood where there were children for my kids to play with. That's a good deal for \$650 a month!

I rented that house for about a year before buying a house of my own. Now I own not only the house where my family and I live, but also a couple of apartments that I rent to other people.

I was glad when I could afford to buy a house. Rather than paying rent to somebody else, I'm getting something permanent for my money. After I've paid off the mortgage on this house, I'll own it. If I sell my house, I'll probably get almost as much money out of it as I have put in. When I rented, I got nothing back when I moved out except for my security deposit, for keeping the place in good condition. I almost didn't get that, because one of my kids broke a window while throwing a baseball in the back yard!

One of my renters, Jim Harris, told me about renting an apartment in New York, where he went to school. An apartment building across from his school advertised two-bedroom condominiums for \$900,000. That comes to \$450,000 a bedroom! Jim, on the other hand, lived in a tiny little studio that was about the size of the car he had to sell in order to afford the rent. He paid something like \$1,000 a month, which is still more money than I paid to have my appendix taken out. When you are a student paying \$1,000 a month for a place to live, I guess you eat a lot of rice and beans. Otherwise, I don't know how you could do it.

It's the law of supply and demand: in a place where a lot of people want to live, housing is going to be expensive. People will be willing to pay a high price for even a tiny place. In some cities, you have to work hard even to find an apartment for rent. You have to look at many possibilities, and you may even find yourself paying a broker to do some of the work, which can be very expensive. Any place you do find is sure to be small.

Although owning a house has many advantages, renting has its advantages too. For one thing, you have some flexibility when it comes to moving. The first apartment I lived in when I left college was right next to a railroad track, and it was so noisy that I couldn't sleep at night. However, I was able to leave there and find someplace new after only a few weeks. If I decided now that I wanted to move, it would probably take me a few months to sell my house.

When you are renting from someone else you aren't responsible for repairs and maintenance. When I was renting the house, our roof started leaking once during a rainstorm. A few things got wet, but the situation was straightened out quickly. I just called our landlord, and he came by and fixed the problem. I didn't have to deal with it myself. But at my house, I have to mow the lawn, clean the gutters, repair the roof if it leaks, and do any number of other things. Everything is my responsibility. That's the price I have to pay for owning something myself. And I'm willing to pay it.

Questions

1. In the second paragraph, the landlord explains the relationship between
 - a) the size of a house and the number of bedrooms it has
 - b) the location of a house and its appearance
 - c) the location of a house and the cost to rent it
 - d) the size of a house and its location
2. Which of the following best describes the landlord's attitude toward owning a house?
 - a) He feels the extra effort is worth it.
 - b) He likes everything but the security deposit.
 - c) He would prefer to rent.
 - d) He feels it gives him added flexibility.
3. Which sentence best summarizes the first paragraph?
 - a) Rain is not good for a house.
 - b) Location is important, but it is not the most important thing.

Narrative Lesson 6-04

- c) Living on a beach is better than living near a garbage dump.
 - d) A good location is more important than a good roof.
4. The information given in the third paragraph
- a) disagrees with the ideas in the second paragraph
 - b) introduces a new idea
 - c) continues the ideas of the second paragraph
 - d) proves that the ideas in the second paragraph are right
5. The landlord mentions all the following as reasons to rent a house except
- a) being able to move on short notice
 - b) ease of maintenance
 - c) the need for a security deposit
 - d) little responsibility
6. According to the law of supply and demand,
- a) finding an apartment in the city requires a broker
 - b) small apartments are better than large ones
 - c) people will pay more for something that many people want but not everyone can have
 - d) apartments cost more where many people live
7. The author mentions rice and beans in paragraph five as an example of
- a) a dinner that does not require much time
 - b) a typical New York dinner
 - c) a dinner that can be cooked in a small place
 - d) an inexpensive dinner
8. Which of the following statements would the author probably not agree with?
- a) Renting is never a good idea.
 - b) Living in a big city can be quite expensive.
 - c) The cost of an apartment depends on things other than size.
 - d) Homeowners have to do their own repairs.
9. The list of jobs in the last paragraph can best be described as
- a) things a homeowner should not have to do
 - b) ways to keep a house in good shape
 - c) things a landlord would not do
 - d) ways to help a landlord
10. The two-bedroom condominiums mentioned in the fifth paragraph are
- a) typical rental apartments
 - b) appropriate for a student
 - c) overpriced
 - d) in a desirable area

The History of Buildings

It is a cold day, turning to evening. Perhaps you are wearing a coat and hat. You are warm enough as long as you keep walking, but as soon as you sit down you start to feel rather chilly. You realize that if you don't find a warm place out of the wind where you can spend the night, you are going to be very cold indeed.

You are not the first person to realize that spending the night out in the cold under the open sky is a bad idea. Many thousands of years ago, similar thoughts occurred to our remote ancestors, who built the first crude shelters. Early humans used materials from their environment to build houses that would keep them warm and dry in cold, rainy weather.

In Europe, early societies built shelter from wooden logs. Ancient Babylonians built houses from clay bricks. Native peoples in North America built large shelters out of wood and woven grass mats. Some people dug holes in the ground and lived down in the earth. Some people lived in caves, taking advantage of shelter provided by nature. In the extreme north, people even made houses out of snow. These houses, called igloos, are still used in some remote areas.

For most of history, people have lived in simple structures. But they have also built other kinds of houses, some of them large and complex. There are huge palaces, like Versailles, in France, and large apartment buildings that house thousands of people.

Human societies have erected buildings and monuments for many different purposes. Around 4,000 years ago, a group of prehistoric people in England built Stonehenge, a collection of enormous standing stones. Scientists are still unsure what the purpose of Stonehenge was, and it may always remain a mystery. The pyramids of Egypt were great burial chambers for dead Pharaohs. The Coliseum of Rome was built so that thousands of people could watch the circus and the chariot races. The Great Wall of China was intended to protect China from northern invaders. The pyramid of Huitzilopochtli, in modern-day Mexico City, was used by the Aztecs as a temple to their god of war. The cathedral at Chartres was a house of worship for the Catholic Church.

Buildings have changed constantly over the course of history, as new materials and techniques have been developed. Beginning in the late 19th century, the use of steel has allowed the construction of skyscrapers—buildings far higher than anything that came before.

Better glass production allows modern buildings to have shiny glass exteriors. Elevators allow people to easily access the upper levels of even the tallest buildings. Supported by steel skeletons rather than huge foundations, skyscrapers can reach heights of over 1800 feet—nearly 5 times the height of the pyramids of Egypt.

With the passage of time, buildings have gotten bigger. The largest building in the world, a Boeing aircraft factory located in Everett, Washington, in the United States, is 472 million cubic feet in volume. This is understandable, since it is used to produce giant aircraft.

People live in many different kinds of houses now, just as they have throughout history. A few people live in large mansions. Many live in apartment buildings, some of which are nearly as large as skyscrapers. Many people also live in smaller houses. And some people continue to live, as their ancestors did before them, in tents, igloos, and other simple structures. Even without steel reinforcement or plate glass, they manage to stay warm at night.

Questions

- The phrase “crude shelters” refers to
 - any buildings that people can live in
 - houses that provide no protection from the rain
 - houses of simple design
 - prehistoric monuments
- The first paragraph suggests that
 - wind is more uncomfortable than cold
 - in bad weather, shelter is necessary
 - anyone who wants to spend the night outside should have a coat and hat
 - any shelter should have a place to walk
- In the fifth paragraph, the author mentions a group of buildings that were intended
 - to attract tourists
 - as monuments to rulers
 - to shelter large numbers of people
 - for purposes other than housing
- With which statement would the author be most likely to agree?
 - Modern methods have made possible larger buildings.
 - People no longer live in crude structures.
 - Most people now live in apartment buildings.
 - A comfortable dwelling requires steel reinforcement.
- Skyscrapers depend on all of the following except
 - elevators
 - improved glass production
 - new building techniques
 - a steel framework
- Which of the following is unknown about Stonehenge?
 - when it was built
 - where it is
 - what it looks like
 - why it was built
- In paragraph three, the phrase “shelter provided by nature” refers to
 - dwellings that don’t have to be built
 - houses made out of earth
 - shelters made by native peoples
 - underground dwellings
- What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
 - Not all modern buildings protect people from the cold.
 - There is as much variety in housing now as there ever was.
 - Apartment buildings are now the best places to live.
 - The size of a dwelling is not important.
- Early houses were made
 - to hold as many people as possible
 - for reasons we don’t understand
 - from materials that people could find
 - primarily in North America
- Which question does this text not answer?
 - When was the Great Wall of China built?
 - How can houses be built using the environment?
 - Why is shelter necessary?
 - How are modern buildings different from early ones?

Narrative Lesson 6-05

Grammar: Articles and Indefinite Adjectives

Articles are small words often used to introduce nouns. The three articles in English are “a,” “an,” and “the.” “A” and “an” are called indefinite articles, because they are used with nouns that are not definitely specified.

When Kate says, “Give me a pot lid,” she is not referring to one pot lid in particular. “An” is used before words that begin with a vowel and sound like they begin with a vowel. Thus we would say, “Let’s find an apartment,” and “Jim has an old chair,” but “He wears a uniform.” “The” precedes nouns that are referred to specifically: “I want the pot lid that’s on the counter.” In this case, only that one pot lid will do. The article “the” may be used with words beginning with either vowels or consonants. Its pronunciation, however, is different in each case. With words beginning with a vowel, “the” is pronounced to rhyme with “she.” Before words beginning with a consonant, “the” rhymes with the article “a.”

Although “the” may be used with either singular or plural nouns, the indefinite articles “a” and “an” are used in the singular only. With plural nouns, an indefinite adjective is used instead. “Give me a pot lid” becomes “Give me some pot lids.” “Some” is also used with nouns that indicate a quantity or a commodity, as in “I have some money.” But if a particular quantity is being specified, “the” is used: “I have the money you gave me.”

Other indefinite articles besides “some” are “any,” “all,” and “every.” “Any” is generally used in negative statements and in questions: “I don’t have any room”; “Do we have any rice?” “All” is used alone for an indefinite reference and with “the” for a definite one: “All apartments are not alike”; “All the apartments they looked at were expensive.” “Every” is used with a singular noun without an article: “Every apartment was expensive.”

Although articles are used quite a bit, they are sometimes omitted. When a quantity or plural noun is referred to in a general way, no article is needed: “Money is useful”; “I love animals.” The same is true of gerunds—verbs used as nouns—and other nouns with a general meaning. Some examples are “Jim enjoys flying” and “Knowledge is priceless.”

Questions

1. When Kate spilled _____ rice, it made _____ mess.
 - a) the/some
 - b) some/the
 - c) the/a
 - d) any/a

2. Kate ordered _____ Chinese food.
 - a) all the
 - b) any
 - c) the
 - d) some
3. Kate and Jim were looking for _____ apartment to rent.
 - a) every
 - b) an
 - c) the
 - d) all
4. They started looking early in _____ morning.
 - a) any
 - b) a
 - c) one
 - d) the
5. They didn’t want to choose _____.
 - a) the wrong apartment
 - b) wrong apartments
 - c) some wrong apartment
 - d) any wrong apartment
6. The new apartment had more than _____ amount of space.
 - a) some usual
 - b) an usual
 - c) the usual
 - d) usual the
7. The apartment had a place for _____.
 - a) gardening
 - b) the gardening
 - c) a gardening
 - d) every gardening
8. Jim asked if _____ were allowed in the apartment.
 - a) all children
 - b) children
 - c) some of children
 - d) no children
9. The landlord said he didn’t pay _____ utility bill.
 - a) an
 - b) some
 - c) every
 - d) all
10. Kate asked if there was _____ storage space.
 - a) every
 - b) no
 - c) the
 - d) any

Narrative Lesson 6-06

Grammar: Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things. Depending on the noun they replace, they can be either singular or plural and either masculine, feminine, or neutral. Depending on their use in a sentence, they can be in subject, object, or possessive form. The possessive form of personal pronouns includes possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns.

The subject forms of the personal pronoun are “I,” “you,” “he,” “she,” “it,” “we,” and “they.” These pronouns are used as the subject of a sentence or clause. The object forms—“me,” “you,” “him,” “her,” “it,” “us,” and “them”—may be used as the direct or indirect object of a verb or as the object of a preposition.

A personal pronoun is not used as the indirect object of a verb when the direct object is also a personal pronoun. So if in the sentence “The deliveryman handed her the bag,” we want to substitute “it” for “bag,” the only way to say this is “The deliveryman handed it to her.”

Possessive adjectives replace the possessive form of a noun. They are “my,” “your,” “his,” “her,” “its,” “our,” “your,” and “their.” Instead of saying, “Kate doesn’t like Jim’s chair,” we can say, “Kate doesn’t like his chair.”

Possessive pronouns replace nouns modified by possessive adjectives. The possessive pronouns are “mine,” “yours,” “his,” “hers,” “ours,” “yours,” and “theirs.” Using a possessive pronoun, we can express “This is my chair” as “This is mine” or “This chair is mine.”

Reflexive pronouns are formed by adding “-self” to a possessive adjective or the object form of a personal pronoun. The reflexive pronouns are “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” They are used as the object of a verb when the action is directed back to the doer of the action.

In other words, the object of the action is the same person or thing as the subject. In the sentence “Jim saw himself in the mirror,” the person who did the seeing is the same as the person who was seen. If the object is not the same person or thing as the subject, a personal pronoun is used: “Jim saw him in the mirror.”

This rule is also true of plural reflexive pronouns. Each action must reflect back on the doer of that action, not someone else. The sentence “Kate and Jim helped themselves” means that Kate helped herself and Jim helped himself. But the sentence “Kate and Jim helped each other” says that each person is helping someone else, so a reflexive pronoun is not used.

A reflexive pronoun may be the object of a prepositional phrase, as in “Jim wanted to see for himself.” But if the object of the preposition is not the same as the subject of the sentence, a personal pronoun should be used. In “Kate got a chair for herself,” the chair is for Kate; in “Kate got a chair for her,” the chair is for someone else.

When a pronoun in the reflexive form is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun in the subject or object case, it is called an intensive pronoun. In the sentence “Jim himself will put the swingset in,” the intensive pronoun “himself” emphasizes that Jim, and not someone else, will do the job.

Questions

1. “I’ll cook dinner for _____,” said Kate.
 - a) ourselves
 - b) us
 - c) me
 - d) you and I
2. Jim said to _____ that he should help Kate.
 - a) anyone
 - b) Jim himself
 - c) himself
 - d) his self
3. Kate asked Jim to get the phone and hand _____.
 - a) her to it
 - b) it her
 - c) her it
 - d) it to her
4. Kate didn’t think the drawer would have room for all _____ things.
 - a) them
 - b) Jim’s and hers
 - c) their
 - d) theirs

Narrative Lesson 6-07

5. “If you put your clothes in the closet, I can’t fit _____ in,” said Kate.
 - a) yours
 - b) my
 - c) myself
 - d) mine
6. “This apartment is too small for _____,” said Kate.
 - a) ourselves
 - b) us
 - c) you and I
 - d) ours
7. Kate introduced _____ to the landlord.
 - a) herself
 - b) ourselves
 - c) himself
 - d) themselves
8. Jim and Kate talked to _____ about where the furniture would go.
 - a) himself and herself
 - b) each other
 - c) ourselves
 - d) themselves
9. Jim and Kate will have to pay the electric bill _____.
 - a) theirselves
 - b) themself
 - c) themselves
 - d) him and herself
10. “_____ both signed the lease,” said Jim.
 - b) She and I
 - a) Ourselves
 - c) She and myself
 - d) Her and I

Grammar: Verb Tenses

The tense of a verb indicates the time of an action, and it gives us other information about the action as well. Although, generally speaking, an action takes place in either the past, present, or future, there are more than three verb tenses.

A sentence may refer to two past actions, one of which took place before the other: “Kate tripped on the clothes Jim had thrown on the floor.” In this sentence, “tripped” is in the past tense. But because the throwing was already completed, or perfected, when the tripping took place, we use the past perfect tense for “had thrown.” The past perfect tense is formed with the past tense of the verb “to have” plus the past participle of the main verb.

A completed action may also be spoken of in the present: “I have signed the lease; now it’s your turn.” “Have signed” uses the present perfect tense, which consists of the present tense of the verb “to have” with the past participle of the main verb.

Finally, we may speak of an action being completed in the future: “By the time Kate and Jim move in, the landlord will have painted the apartment.” “Will have painted” is in the future perfect tense—the future tense of “have” with the past participle of “to paint.”

Another possibility is that an action taking place in the past, present, or future is ongoing. A simple example is “I am waiting for you.” Since the waiting is continuing, or progressing, at the present time, we use the present progressive tense—the present tense of “to be” plus the present participle of the main verb—to describe it. The past and future progressive tenses use the past and future tenses of “to be” with the present participle to refer to actions continuing in the past or future.

Often, a verb in a progressive tense is used with a verb in the simple past, present, or future tense. Here is an example in the past tense: “While Jim was looking for the pot lid, Kate measured the rice.” This means that the measuring took place while the looking continued.

The sentence “Jim is going to sign the lease” uses a special form of the present progressive tense to indicate that something will happen in the near future. This is called the near future tense, and it uses the progressive form of the verb “to go” with an infinitive. The near future tense can also be expressed in the past, as in “Jim was going to sign the lease, but he changed his mind.”

Questions

1. When Jim and Kate arrived home, they _____ supper.
 - a) won't eat
 - b) hadn't eaten
 - c) haven't eaten
 - d) weren't eating
2. Kate _____ dinner when Jim came into the kitchen.
 - a) has made
 - b) is making
 - c) made
 - d) was making
3. She spilled the rice she _____ into the cup.
 - a) had poured
 - b) has poured
 - c) is pouring
 - d) poured
4. "_____ the restaurant," said Kate.
 - a) I will have called
 - b) I'm going to call
 - c) I call
 - d) I had call
5. "The remote _____," said Kate.
 - a) didn't working
 - b) doesn't work
 - c) wasn't worked
 - d) haven't worked
6. Kate grabbed the remote and _____ over something on the floor.
 - a) had tripped
 - b) has tripped
 - c) was tripping
 - d) tripped
7. "_____ a great apartment," said Kate.
 - a) I'm finding
 - b) I've found
 - c) I'm found
 - d) I find
8. After they called the landlord, Kate and Jim _____ to meet him.
 - a) are going
 - b) had gone
 - c) went
 - d) will go
9. "_____ my chair right here," said Jim.
 - a) I putting
 - b) I've putting
 - c) I'll put
 - d) I'll putting
10. "I always _____ for gas and water," said the landlord.
 - a) will be paying
 - b) am paying
 - c) paying
 - d) pay

SHOPPING

Contents

Unit 7 Picture Lessons

7-01	Entertainment	91
7-02	Specialty Stores	92
7-03	Making Selections	93
7-04	Ordering Products	94
7-05	Services	95
7-06	Restaurants	96
7-07	Kinds of Stores; Prices	97
7-08	Locations	98
7-09	Accounts	99
7-10	Being a Smart Consumer	100
7-11	Review Lesson	101

Unit 8 Video Lessons: Buying Groceries

8-01	Out of Food	104
8-02	Grocery Shopping	104
8-03	Choosing Products	106
8-04	Variety of Items	106
8-05	Getting Help	108
8-06	Checking Out.....	110

Unit 9 Narrative Lessons

9-01	Kate's Diary	120
9-02	Jim's Diary	121
9-03	Shopping With Kate	123
9-04	Kate's Finances	124
9-05	The History of Shopping.....	126
9-06	The History of Money.....	128
9-07	Grammar: Indefinite Pronouns	129
9-08	Grammar: Verbals	131
9-09	Grammar: Conjunctions	132

7-01 Entertainment

- 01 They decided to stay at home and watch a movie.
They decided to go out and watch a movie.
They decided to watch the baseball game at home.
They decided to watch the baseball game at the stadium.
- 02 I doubt their team is winning.
I think their team is winning.
I think they're watching a comedy.
I think they're watching a horror movie.
- 03 They'd rather play soccer than watch it.
He'd rather play soccer, but for the next eight weeks, he can only watch.
He says he likes to play golf, but sometimes it doesn't seem like he's having fun.
He probably isn't as good at soccer as he used to be.
- 04 They look like they're listening to a symphony.
They look like they're listening to rock music.
It's sunny outside, so they decided to spend the day doing this.
They're too tired to do anything.
- 05 This is a new way to listen to music.
This is an old-fashioned way to listen to music.
This is a new way to go down a snowy mountain.
People have been going down snowy mountains this way for a long time.
- 06 Some people like to go where they can see how people lived a long time ago.
Some people like to go where they can see wild animals in their natural habitat.
Some people go where they can see wild animals from all over the world.
Some people go where they can see how people live now.
- 07 Some old buildings are still used the way they used to be.
Some old buildings are no longer used the way they used to be.
Some new buildings were built to address new needs.
Some new buildings were built to address old needs.
- 08 Some works of art made hundreds of years ago are still beautiful today.
Some things made hundreds of years ago can be very mysterious.
Some things made hundreds of years ago still work.
Some things written hundreds of years ago are still as important to us as they were when they were written.
- 09 If you aren't Chinese, going here will probably be expensive.
If you live in Miami, going here won't be too expensive.
Getting here would be difficult and expensive, no matter where you live.
Doing this is probably cheap no matter where you live.
- 10 You might check this to see what movies are playing at the local cinema.
No newspaper can tell you what you're going to see here.
You might wear these clothes to opening night at the opera.
You might wear these clothes to a rock concert.

7-02 Specialty Stores

- 01 She probably got her outfit from a sporting goods store.
She looks like she just got back from the bookstore.
She's excited to listen to the purchases she made at the music store.
She's installing her new software from the computer store.
- 02 He needs to go to the shoe store.
He needs to go to the hardware store.
A jewelry store is a good place to buy this.
A toy store is a good place to buy this.
- 03 Rover's owners buy things like this for him at the pet store.
Andy's parents buy things like this for him at the toy store.
Ann's boyfriend buys these for her at the flower shop.
Sue's parents buy things like this for her at the bakery.
- 04 Dr. Brown sends some of his patients here.
Coach Al sends some of his athletes here.
When Robert's clothes are dirty, he brings them here.
When his TV breaks, John sends it here.
- 05 When Ann runs out of these, she calls the pharmacy.
When his pants don't fit, he calls a tailor.
When her glasses are too weak, she goes to an optometrist.
When Andy does this, his Mom goes to the hardware store.
- 06 She probably went to a bridal store.
She probably spends time at a camera store.
If you're on a diet, you shouldn't come here.
If you're allergic to cats, you probably shouldn't come here.
- 07 The owner of this house needs to go to the paint store.
The owner of this house needs to go to the furniture store.
If he wants more people to hear his music, he should go to a stereo store.
If he wants to look good, he should stop what he's doing and go to the hairdresser.
- 08 She needs a mechanic.
The people at the video rental store aren't going to be happy.
He might get a present for his wife here.
She might get a present for her baby daughter here.
- 09 He got this at the stationery store.
He got this at the florist's.
He got this at the baker's.
He got this at the newsstand.
- 10 If your couch looks like this, you might go to a furniture store.
If your car looks like this, you might go to the auto dealership.
If your fruit looks like this, you might go to the fruit stand.
If your stomach looks like this, you might go to an aerobics class.

7-03 Making Selections

- 01 You'll want to test drive this before you buy it.
You'll want to try this on before you buy it.
You'll want to lie down on this before you buy it.
You might want to sample this before you buy it.
- 02 He'll need a smaller size.
He'll probably want a different style.
They'll probably want a bigger one.
They'll probably want a stronger one.
- 03 If you order a shirt this way, you can't try it on before you buy it.
If you buy a shirt in a clothing store, you can try it on here.
If you're buying this, you probably won't have to try it on.
Trying this on wouldn't be easy.
- 04 If this doesn't fit, she can return it for a refund within thirty days.
If this isn't cooked right, she can send it back.
If this stops working, the warranty probably will cover its repair.
If this breaks down, the warranty won't cover its repair anymore.
- 05 This fits.
This tastes good.
This is running smoothly.
This is broken.
- 06 This shirt fits, but I'm not going to buy it.
I prefer blue.
This shirt fits, but I'm not going to buy it.
I prefer red.
This cracker tastes good, but I'm not going to eat it. I want something sweet.
This cookie tastes good, but I'm not going to eat it. I want something salty.
- 07 These are made for a special purpose, but many people wear them all the time.
People only wear these on their feet for a special purpose.
He will definitely want to test this before he uses it.
He can't really test this before he uses it.
- 08 She's stuck with these whether she likes them or not.
These plates will be useful, but they're not very romantic. She had hoped her boyfriend would get her flowers.
Her sister and her mother both got her the same book. She likes the book but will have to return one copy to the bookstore.
He hopes he got the sweater in her size. If she tries it on and it doesn't fit, she can exchange it.
- 09 What fits his father would be too big for him.
What fits her mother would be too big for her.
You probably wouldn't want this man to ride in your car.
It would be OK for this man to ride in your car.
- 10 He thinks his wife's choice for a chair is OK, but he'd rather have a recliner.
She agrees that the chair looks comfortable, but she thinks her husband's choice is ugly.
It's a nice bed, but isn't it a little too small for the two of us?
If they can't find a mattress they both like, this might be their only solution.

7-04 Ordering Products

- 01 She buys in bulk.
She buys in small quantities.
He is measuring his own inseam for the pants he's ordering.
He is having his inseam measured for the pants he's ordering.
- 02 John needs a belt and wants to order it from a catalog. This is how he should measure his size.
John needs a belt and wants to order it from a catalog. This is not how he should measure his size.
This T-shirt is available in three colors.
This T-shirt is available in three sizes.
- 03 Ann paid a lot to have this shipped.
Ann didn't pay a lot to have this shipped.
This item is on sale for 10% off.
This item is cheaper in large quantities.
- 04 You can use this to pay on-line, on the phone, through the mail, or in person.
You can only use this to pay through the mail or in person.
You can only use this to pay in person.
You can only use this in a game.
- 05 With a phone, you can order things you see here.
With an Internet connection, you can order things you see here.
When you're flying across the ocean, you can order things using this.
You can't order anything using this.
- 06 This could be shipped, but it would cost a lot.
It would be risky to have this shipped. It is fragile.
It would be pretty easy to ship this.
This could be shipped, but a person would need to provide some care along the way.
- 07 This is so valuable that you might want to insure it before you send it.
This is so cheap that it's doubtful you'd want to send it anywhere.
This is not the most efficient way to send a letter.
This is an efficient way to send a letter if you want it to arrive very fast.
- 08 On which page is the item you want?
What is the number of the item you want?
What is the price of the item you want?
What is your customer number?
- 09 Ann likes this shirt, but she received the wrong size. She'll exchange it for another size.
This shirt fits Ann, but she doesn't like it. She'll return it.
Ann ordered a shirt but received this. She'll call customer service to complain.
Ann likes this shirt and it fits. She'll keep it.
- 10 She is taking someone's order.
She is placing an order.
This business probably doesn't have a catalog or a Web site.
No one wanted anything from these catalogs anymore.

7-05 Services

- 01 You get car insurance in case this happens.
You get homeowner's insurance in case this happens.
You get life insurance in case this happens.
You are required to have car insurance before you can do this.
- 02 If your head hurts for a week, you should go see a doctor.
You should go to the emergency room at a hospital if you don't stop bleeding.
You should go to a dentist if these hurt too badly.
If you're going to be a mother, you should go see an obstetrician.
- 03 You do this at a golf course.
You do this at a fitness center.
You don't need to go anywhere special to do this.
You get this done at a spa.
- 04 You will probably need a stockbroker to take advantage of the stock market's good performance.
You won't need a stockbroker to take advantage of 7's good performance.
You will probably need to buy tickets to see him perform.
You won't need tickets to see him perform.
- 05 She'll make you look better.
She'll make you feel better.
He'll help you with financial matters.
He'll help you with legal matters.
- 06 Getting this done isn't very expensive.
Getting this done is expensive, but it should be finished in a day.
Getting this done is expensive, and it won't be finished in a day.
Having this happen can be quite expensive.
- 07 A real-estate agent will help you buy or sell this.
A gardener will help you take care of this mess.
You can leave him in a kennel when you go on vacation.
A caterer will help you serve dinner to all of your friends.
- 08 This person is dressed for the swimming pool.
This person is dressed for the golf course.
This person is seeing his doctor.
This person is seeing his accountant.
- 09 Without a doctor, you might end up here.
Without a lawyer, you might end up here.
With a personal trainer, you might be able to look like this.
With an interpreter at your side, you might not need this.
- 10 An optometrist might help you with these.
An orthopedic surgeon might help you with this.
A stockbroker might be able to help you with this.
An ear, nose, and throat specialist might help you with this.

7-06 Restaurants

- 01 He has \$50 to spend on dinner. He will probably eat here.
He has \$7 to spend on dinner. He will probably eat here.
He has \$0.75 to spend on dinner. Maybe he can afford something here.
He doesn't need to spend any money on his dinner. He bought his groceries last week.
- 02 She is making dinner for herself.
She is making dinner for others.
He is serving dinner to his family.
He is serving dinner to others.
- 03 The daily special is soup. Ann didn't get the daily special.
It's cold outside. Ann wanted to eat something that would warm her up.
They want a table for four.
They want to wait for their table at the bar.
- 04 He got soup, a salad, and a drink for lunch.
He got a sandwich, a salad, and a drink for lunch.
He is having dessert and coffee after his lunch.
He isn't hungry. He's just taking a coffee break.
- 05 She is eating at a nice restaurant. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is eating at home. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is eating fast food. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is trying to lose weight. She'll select her dinner from these.
- 06 They might have to call ahead to make reservations at a place like this.
They don't have to call ahead to make reservations at a place like this.
Ann ordered a hamburger. It came with a side order of fries and a drink.
Ann ordered a hamburger. It didn't come with anything.
- 07 This is a good place to eat when the weather is nice.
This is a nice place to eat regardless of the weather.
You can get your dinner here at any time and in any weather, but it probably won't taste very good.
Many restaurants have signs like this.
- 08 The hostess is seating them.
The waiter is taking their order.
The busboy is clearing their dirty dishes.
They are paying the cashier for their dinner.
- 09 She was careless. She spilled the spaghetti.
She wasn't careless. She didn't drop the money. She left it as a tip.
He's ordered his food "to go." He wants carryout food.
He's ordered his food "for here." He wants to eat at the restaurant.
- 10 Here, you can eat as much as you want for one price.
Here, you pay for every item you eat.
She is dressed to go to a formal restaurant.
She is dressed to go to a casual restaurant.

7-07 Kinds of Stores; Prices

- 01 These are things you can get at a grocery store.
These are things you can get at a department store.
These are things you can get at a superstore.
This is something you can't get at a superstore, a grocery store or a department store.
- 02 You can buy these at a department store, a grocery store, or a superstore.
You can buy these at a department store, but not at a grocery store.
You can buy this at a superstore, but not at a department store.
You use this to shop in a grocery store or a superstore, but not in a department store.
- 03 The price of soda here will usually be less than it is at a restaurant.
It is more economical to buy rice in large quantities. This is probably an economical way to buy rice.
It is more economical to use one of these.
If you have one of these, you can get milk for free.
- 04 This is not the most economical way to fly.
This is probably the most economical way to fly.
This has the same price per ounce whether you buy a large or a small quantity.
It is more economical to buy this in large quantities than in small packages.
- 05 This is not the most economical way to get from one place to another.
This is often the most economical way to get from one place to another.
If you don't mind paying full price, you might buy these jeans.
If you buy jeans only when they're on sale, you might buy these jeans.
- 06 A lot of people use this to try to find bargains.
No one goes here expecting to find something cheap.
A lot of people borrow money to purchase one of these.
No one borrows money to purchase this.
- 07 This person buys shoes wholesale.
This person buys books retail.
This person doesn't get his vegetables wholesale or retail. He grows them himself.
She doesn't get her sweaters wholesale or retail. She makes them herself.
- 08 Someone might borrow money to buy this and take five years to pay it off.
Someone might borrow money to buy this and take thirty years to pay it off.
This is a good way to find a store that will sell you what you want.
This isn't such a good way to find a store that will sell you what you want.
- 09 You can use this to comparison shop.
You can use this to pay for a purchase.
You can use this as collateral on a large purchase.
You can work to pay for all the things you've bought.
- 10 Things at this store are likely to be cheaper.
Things at this store are likely to be more expensive.
You don't have to pay for these. They're free samples.
This isn't on sale, but she won't pay full price. She has a coupon.

7-08 Locations

- 01 You can find this in the automotive department of a superstore.
You can find this in the produce department of a grocery store.
You can find this in the pet supply aisle of either a grocery store or a superstore.
You can find this in the frozen-food aisle of a grocery store.
- 02 Cereal is in aisle 3.
Bread is in aisle 12.
Cake mix is in aisle 14.
Soda is in aisle 17.
- 03 These stores are in a mall.
These stores are in a shopping center.
This isn't a store.
This store is out of business.
- 04 You'd probably find this in the drama section of the bookstore.
You'd probably find this in the children's section of the bookstore.
You'd probably find this in the classical section of the music store.
You'd probably find this in the rock section of the music store.
- 05 He's looking for a used car in the classified section.
He's looking at used cars on a used-car lot.
He's looking at the used car that's being sold by his neighbor.
He's fixing his own car.
- 06 They are having a yard sale.
Tommy and Billy are selling lemonade.
Ann is shopping at a thrift shop.
She is looking for a new car at the dealership.
- 07 This shop sells used books.
This shop sells new books.
This shop sells new clothes.
This shop sells old clothes.
- 08 Most of the time, a used car is cheap. This one wouldn't be, though.
This used car is cheap, but it might not last too long.
This has been used by many people over hundreds of years, but it is still valuable.
You would never buy one of these used.
- 09 This may not look good, but it'll do just as well as a new one.
This is old and doesn't work as well as a new one.
This is the housewares department at the department store.
This is the sporting goods department at the superstore.
- 10 A flea market or garage sale is a good place to find these.
An antique jewelry store is a good place to look for this.
You can't buy this at a store, but if you want to travel on one, you can go to a travel agent.
You can buy this in many places, or you can have it delivered to your home.

7-09 Accounts

- 01 This card allows Robert to make long-distance calls.
This card allows Robert to borrow books from the library.
This card allows Robert to get into his fitness center.
This card allows Robert to rent videos at the video-rental store.
- 02 He accumulates miles on his frequent-flyer accounts while he's doing this.
He burns calories while he's here.
He communicates with his office when he's not there by using this.
He sometimes gets discounts at the grocery store when he uses this.
- 03 Sara is in a hurry. She is paying a lot of money per minute to talk on this.
Sara isn't in a hurry. She pays her ISP for unlimited access to the Internet.
Sara is in a hurry. This is due back at the store in an hour.
Sara isn't in a hurry to get anywhere, but the faster she goes, the better her workout is.
- 04 This is the amount due.
This is the date due.
This is the account number.
This is the number to call if you have questions.
- 05 This doesn't come assembled.
This doesn't come with batteries.
This doesn't come with a warranty, but it did come with batteries.
This doesn't come with operating instructions.
- 06 He looked around for a long time before he found the perfect place to spend the winter.
He didn't have much of a choice about where he was going to spend his winter.
You should visit several places and check references before you decide who is going to take care of her.
You can leave her alone for most of the day.
- 07 She can withdraw money from either her checking or her savings account with this.
She can withdraw money only from her checking account with this.
He can talk to a teller outside the building from his car.
He can use this to manage his accounts, but he can't use it to talk to a teller or withdraw cash.
- 08 If he makes a lot of money and has a wife and children, he might buy a life insurance policy for this much.
If he's single and doesn't have a job, he probably doesn't need more than this much life insurance.
This car will probably be insured for collision damage up to \$30,000.
This car will probably not be insured for collision damage. If it is in an accident, it probably won't be repaired.
- 09 She keeps these so she can keep track of all her cash and credit card purchases.
She records the checks she writes in this so she can balance her account.
Her bank charges her a fee for transactions that require a teller, so she gets cash from her account this way.
She is visiting Europe. She'll need to exchange these for euros.
- 10 Only coins are accepted here.
Credit cards are accepted here.
He can probably charge this.
He probably can't charge this.

7-10 Being a Smart Consumer

- 01 If he doesn't have any cash, he should come here before he goes to the mall.
If he doesn't have a good credit history, he might have trouble buying one of these.
If he's hungry at the mall, he'll have a lot of choices.
If he's hungry at home, he's limited to what's in here.
- 02 The mall is miles away. She can get there on this as long as she goes alone.
She had better take this to the grocery store so she'll be able to carry her groceries home.
She is moving from one house to another. She'll need this.
After she buys a cat, she'll need this to get him home.
- 03 A shopping cart will help her carry all this. She'll need to find out about the delivery policy before she can figure out how to get this refrigerator home.
She'll need to be careful mailing this.
A pickup truck will help her get this lumber home.
- 04 Does this have a warranty? It doesn't work. Can I return this? It doesn't fit.
This is too old to be covered by the warranty. I'll call the repairman.
Hopefully, he's insured.
- 05 This costs \$100. In the United States, adding sales tax would make your total about \$105. This costs \$20. If you order it from a catalog, you'll pay about \$4 shipping and handling. The cost of this service isn't taxed.
Insuring this for mailing would cost a lot.
- 06 This car needs to be towed.
This lawn needs to be mowed.
This person needs new glasses.
Help! I need a doctor.
- 07 Ann comes here to send a payment every month. Ann comes here and pays for these every week. Ann uses this daily, but pays for it only once a month.
Ann is supposed to use this daily, but she doesn't.
- 08 This is a good way to enjoy yourself if you're home alone.
This is a good way to have fun with friends at the end of a long workday.
This is a good way to have fun with kids on a Saturday.
This isn't much fun, but doing it yourself is a good way to save money.
- 09 You can save money by cooking for yourself instead of coming here.
You can save money by getting your clothes from here.
He might be able to earn more money by spending more time here.
You'll save money on gas if you use this to get around.
- 10 Using this will deduct money from your checking account almost immediately.
Using this won't save you any money, but you won't have to pay for what you buy until next month.
Buying several of these at once will probably reduce the price per unit.
Buying several of these at once won't reduce the price per unit.

7-11 Review Lesson

- 01 Some works of art made hundreds of years ago are still beautiful today.
Some things made hundreds of years ago can be very mysterious.
Some things made hundreds of years ago still work.
Some things written hundreds of years ago are still as important to us as they were when they were written.
- 02 The owner of this house needs to go to the paint store.
The owner of this house needs to go to the furniture store.
If he wants more people to hear his music, he should go to a stereo store.
If he wants to look good, he should stop what he's doing and go to the hairdresser.
- 03 If this doesn't fit, she can return it for a refund within thirty days.
If this isn't cooked right, she can send it back.
If this stops working, the warranty probably will cover its repair.
If this breaks down, the warranty won't cover its repair anymore.
- 04 She is taking someone's order.
She is placing an order.
This business probably doesn't have a catalog or a Web site.
No one wanted anything from these catalogs anymore.
- 05 If your head hurts for a week, you should go see a doctor.
You should go to the emergency room at a hospital if you don't stop bleeding.
You should go to a dentist if these hurt too badly.
If you're going to be a mother, you should go see an obstetrician.
- 06 She is eating at a nice restaurant. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is eating at home. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is eating fast food. She'll select her dinner from this.
She is trying to lose weight. She'll select her dinner from these.
- 07 Someone might borrow money to buy this and take five years to pay it off.
Someone might borrow money to buy this and take thirty years to pay it off.
This is a good way to find a store that will sell you what you want.
This isn't such a good way to find a store that will sell you what you want.
- 08 A flea market or garage sale is a good place to find these.
An antique jewelry store is a good place to look for this.
You can't buy this at a store, but if you want to travel on one, you can go to a travel agent.
You can buy this in many places, or you can have it delivered to your home.
- 09 He looked around for a long time before he found the perfect place to spend the winter.
He didn't have much of a choice about where he was going to spend his winter.
You should visit several places and check references before you decide who is going to take care of her.
You can leave her alone for most of the day.
- 10 A shopping cart will help her carry all this.
She'll need to find out about the delivery policy before she can figure out how to get this refrigerator home.
She'll need to be careful mailing this.
A pickup truck will help her get this lumber home.

Video Lessons: Buying Groceries

Scene 1 Out of Food

That morning, Jim got to the kitchen before I did. When I asked him why there wasn't any bread, he told me he had made himself a sandwich. "But where's the rest?" I asked. He told me he had made himself three sandwiches.

Well then, I would scramble some eggs. Then I found out we had no eggs, either. Jim must have been really hungry last night. What was left? There was always cereal... just not very much cereal.

I wouldn't be having that for breakfast, either. I knew what we were going to do. I got the shopping list and showed it to Jim. "You're coming with me," I said.

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Jim wanted to know if I had the list. Of course I had the list! And we only had 45 minutes to get all this. Then I could eat my breakfast.

I got a cart. So did Jim. No. I tried again. So did Jim. No. One more time. Good. Let's go.

First on the list: fruits and vegetables. Oh! There was Bobby—the best clerk in the store. Bobby, this is my husband, Jim. Jim, this is Bobby.

We're in a big hurry. He asked if he could help us. "We're looking for fresh peas," said Jim. Bobby said they only had frozen peas. When Jim went to get them, I had to laugh. He doesn't know where anything is! No luck? Never mind. We've got to keep moving.

Scene 1 Out of Food

One morning, I was having breakfast when Kate came in. She wanted to make toast, but there wasn't any bread on the counter. I told her I had made a sandwich the night before. She thought there'd been more bread than that. Well, three sandwiches.

"That's all right," she said. "I'll have scrambled eggs." I had to stop her. "Actually," I said, "I had some eggs, too. After the sandwiches." This cereal is really, really good. Oh. Oh, Kate wants some? I hope this is enough.

No. I guess not. She was smiling, which made me think she had a plan. "We're going shopping," she said. "Both of us."

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

At the grocery store, Kate was moving fast. She showed me the list and told me we had 45 minutes to get everything on it. Then she was going to have her breakfast.

We went for the shopping carts. We each grabbed one. We did it again. Wait. After you.

Kate pushed our cart toward the produce aisle. Suddenly, she stopped and looked up. "Oh," she said. "There's Bobby." Bobby was a friendly man with a lot of eggplants—so many he couldn't shake hands.

We didn't have time to talk because Kate was in such a hurry, but we did tell him we were looking for fresh peas. Oh, there weren't any, Bobby said. Only frozen. I went to get them, but then I realized I didn't know where they were. Kate said we'd better keep moving. See you later, Bobby.

Scene 1 Out of Food

Kate: Hey, Honey! I think I'll make some toast.

There was bread here...

Jim: I made myself a sandwich last night.

Kate: But where's the rest?

Jim: Well, I made three sandwiches.

Kate: Oh, three... that's all right. I'll have scrambled eggs. I know there are eggs in the fridge...

Jim: Actually, I had some eggs too. After the sandwiches.

Kate: I see. Then I guess I could just have cereal.

That is, if there were more than that. Jim, do you know what we're going to do?

Jim: What?

Kate: We're going to take this list... and we're going shopping.

Jim: OK.

Kate: Both of us. You're coming with me.

Jim: Oh.

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Jim: You've got the list, right?

Kate: Of course I have the list.

Jim: How much time do we have?

Kate: We have 45 minutes to get everything on this list... and then I'm going to have my breakfast!

Jim: OK.

Kate: First we need to go to the produce section...

Oh. There's Bobby... Hi.

Bobby: Hello! Good to see you.

Kate: Bobby, this is my husband, Jim. Jim, this is Bobby.

Bobby: These are eggplants.

Kate: We're in a big hurry.

Bobby: Well, maybe I can help you find something.

Jim: We're looking for fresh peas.

Bobby: Oh, no. We only have frozen.

Jim: Then I'll get the frozen peas.

Kate: He has no idea where anything is!

Jim: I have no idea where the frozen peas are.

Kate: And we've got to go.

Jim: See you later, Bobby.

Continued

Scene 1 Out of Food

Jim is having breakfast. Most people eat breakfast only in the morning. But Jim thinks any time is a good time for breakfast. He had breakfast last night, too. That's why there isn't any bread on the counter for Kate.

There won't be any eggs in the refrigerator, either. Don't bother, Kate. Jim had a big breakfast last night. And if you're thinking about cereal, you'd better move fast. You may already be too late.

See what I mean? Kate is smiling, but she's not happy. She wants some groceries. She's grabbing her shopping list. Now she's grabbing Jim. Let's go.

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Wait, Kate! This is going to be a fast shopping trip. In fact, Kate says she only has 45 minutes. She likes to eat her breakfast in the morning.

Hold on, Jim. You only need one shopping cart. You've never shopped here before. Only Kate knows her way around.

Kate reads the list while she's pushing the cart. Luckily, she stops before she hits Bobby. Kate's known Bobby for a long time. He needs to stack eggplants.

But if Kate and Jim are in a hurry, he can help. Fresh peas? He tells them they won't find any, only frozen ones. Kate says she'll be surprised if Jim finds any frozen peas, either. He doesn't. That's OK. It's time to get moving again.

Continued

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Continued

All right, let's see... I told Jim I would get the grapefruit and the bananas and he should get the lettuce. Bobby must have heard me. Suddenly he appeared, handing us lettuce, bananas, and two grapefruit! Amazing, isn't he?

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Continued

Kate had a plan. She said she would get the grapefruit and the bananas, and that I should get the lettuce. The lettuce, all right, so where... and there was Bobby, carrying the lettuce, the bananas, and the grapefruit. Pretty good. So, where were the frozen peas?

Scene 3 Choosing Products

With all this help, we'd be finished in no time. "Now," I said to my helpers, "we need a box of pasta." Bobby just reached out and got one. Thank you, Bobby!

Next, dried beans. "Down there, I think," I said to Jim. Oh! I was wrong. All right. How about a jar of tomato sauce? Bobby almost knocked me down to get it. I hoped Jim was learning something.

Jim picked two terrible cereals. One tasted like cookies and the other like candy. No way were we getting those. Then I saw something much better—it was full of vitamins and delicious, too. Jim, it does not taste like cardboard!

The next cereal he picked cost too much, and I told him we couldn't get it without a coupon. Guess who had a coupon? Thank you, Bobby!

Scene 3 Choosing Products

We moved to the next aisle, with Bobby right behind us. I listened hard. A box of pasta, Kate said. And there was Bobby, with the pasta.

A bag of pinto beans, Kate said. We looked up and down the aisle, but Bobby knew better. And when Kate said she wanted pasta sauce, he didn't wait around. Bobby was fast.

On the cereal aisle, I couldn't decide between my two favorites. They were both so good. Kate didn't like either one. One had too much chocolate, the other one too much sugar. "I want that one," she said, pointing to a brand that I thought tasted like cardboard.

How about this one instead? It's delicious, and there's a cool airplane on the front. "It's expensive," said Kate. "We need a coupon." And there was Bobby, with a coupon. It's great what two guys working together can accomplish.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Now we needed corn and... Whoa! Hello, Bobby. Did I say corn? Bobby had canned corn, cornstarch, cornmeal, corn tortillas, fresh corn, and corn chips. "Which would you like?" he asked.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

We decided that next we needed... some corn. "What kind of corn?" said Bobby. "I've got canned corn, cornstarch, cornmeal, corn tortillas, corn on the cob, and corn chips."

Continued

Continued

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Continued

Bobby: See you soon.

Kate: We need lettuce and grapefruit and bananas. I'll get the grapefruit and the bananas, and you get the lettuce.

Jim: Sure. If I can just...

Kate: Look who's here! With the lettuce, the bananas, and two grapefruit! Amazing, isn't he?

Jim: No frozen peas?

Scene 3 Choosing Products

Kate: Now, we need a box of pasta.

Jim: OK. Pasta, pasta.

Kate: Well, Bobby. Thank you.

Jim: Oh.

Kate: And a bag of pinto beans.

Jim: Pinto beans.

Kate: Down there, I think.

Jim: OK.

Kate: Or did I see them at the... Oh, thank you, Bobby! Now who can find tomato sauce?

Jim: Right. OK, the uh...

Kate: Oh! Bobby can! Let's go get some cereal.

Jim: I don't know. These both look pretty good.

Kate: They're terrible! This one's full of chocolate, and this one... Well, why don't you just buy candy?

Jim: I love these cereals.

Kate: Oh! I want that one!

Jim: This tastes like cardboard.

Kate: Jim, it does not taste like cardboard.

Jim: How about this one instead? It tastes good, and there's a cool airplane on the front.

Kate: It's expensive. We need a coupon. Oh. We have a coupon. Thank you, Bobby.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Kate: Now we need corn... Oh!

Bobby: What kind of corn? I've got canned corn, cornstarch, cornmeal, corn tortillas, corn on the cob, and corn chips. Which would you like?

Continued

Scene 2 Grocery Shopping

Continued

Jim needs to learn where things are. If Kate gets the grapefruit and the bananas, can he find the lettuce? Jim thinks so. While he's thinking, Bobby shows up with everything. How did he know what Kate wanted? How did he get it so fast? And what did he do with those eggplants?

Scene 3 Choosing Products

It looks as though there are three of them now. So... can anybody find the pasta? Bobby can. Kate is starting to feel better.

Next? Dried beans. While Kate and Jim look, Bobby runs. Did you say dried beans? And pasta sauce? Watch out. Bobby thinks this is much more fun than stacking eggplants.

Uh-oh. Jim and Kate are arguing about which cereal to buy, and Jim is losing. Bobby has seen this before. What's Kate so excited about? A brand of cereal that Jim wouldn't eat if it were the last cereal on earth.

Then Jim finds a kind they both like, but Kate says they can't afford it. They can afford it with that coupon. Stick around, Bobby. You're doing great.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

While looking for corn, Kate and Jim run into Bobby again. Corn? Check it out. Canned corn, cornstarch, cornmeal, corn tortillas, fresh corn, and corn chips. What will it be?

Continued

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Continued

We pointed to the ear of corn, and Bobby handed it to us. But we needed a half dozen. So Bobby gave us five more. Thank you, Bobby!

Jim, keep your eyes open for the paper towels. There they are! Let's see... Wait, not a single roll! Those are \$1.49. If you buy a pack of two, you pay just \$1.29 a roll. Jim took down a package of three.

Now he was thinking, but maybe we could do even better. I was pricing a package of six rolls when suddenly... Oh, my goodness! Bobby had found the best deal. Ninety-nine cents a roll! I could see why he was employee of the month.

Scene 5 Getting Help

The next stop was the deli section for sandwich meat. But who was that in the case? It was Bobby, of course, hard at work. Jim asked me what kind of cold cuts I wanted. We told Bobby we wanted a pound of turkey and a pound of roast beef. Bobby went back to work.

The pies look delicious. Oh, look. Cherry pie, my favorite. But I don't see a price. How much is it? Oh. What a deal! We'll take it.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Continued

That was impressive. We said we'd take corn on the cob. Bobby handed us one ear. Well, we really needed six ears. And Bobby gave us five more, just like that. Good work, Bobby!

Now we were looking for paper towels. We found them, and I grabbed a nice big roll. "No!" said Kate. She had a better idea. They're cheaper if you buy more than one. She got a package of two, and I thought that if two were good, then three must be better.

Kate thought we could find an even better deal. Bobby found it for us: a package of 12. He even put it in the cart. Wonderful! "You can have this back," I told him. All right, what's next on the list?

Scene 5 Getting Help

On to the deli section for cold cuts. Hey! What's that in the case? A person! Bobby! Bobby sure got around. He pulled himself out and asked us how he could help us. That was easy. Kate wanted turkey and I wanted roast beef, so we asked for a pound of each. Bobby went back into the case.

Look at those pies. We like pie. Kate likes cherry. I like apple and lemon. I wondered how much... Oh. \$2.50. We'll take it.

Continued

Continued

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Continued

Kate: I think we want the fresh corn.

Bobby: There you go.

Kate: Great!

Jim: But we need six of these.

Bobby: Then you can have six.

Kate: Bobby! You did it again.

Jim: Just like magic.

Kate: Jim, keep your eyes open for the paper towels.

Oh! Here they are. Why don't you get...

Jim: Got one right here.

Kate: No! They're cheaper if you buy more than one.

Like this.

Jim: Right. Then three's better than two, right?

Kate: But maybe we can find an even better deal than that. There's a package of six rolls, and down here...

Jim: Honey...

Kate: Oh, my goodness!

Jim: I'd say that's the one we want. Here. You can have this one back.

Kate: Now we need cold cuts.

Jim: Let's go!

Scene 5 Getting Help

Kate: Do you see any cold cuts you want? Oh!

Jim: Well, I see Bobby.

Kate: Bobby?

Bobby: Hi! Can I help you with anything?

Jim: Hi there. What do you want, Kate?

Kate: Turkey for me. A pound of turkey, Bobby, and uh, what...

Jim: Roast beef.

Kate: A pound of roast beef.

Bobby: Glad to help.

Kate: Ooh, cherry pie! My favorite.

Jim: Lemon and apple. My favorites.

Kate: But I don't see a price.

Bobby: There you go.

Kate: Oh. What a deal! We'll take it.

Scene 4 A Variety of Items

Continued

Kate and Jim decide on the fresh corn. There you are.

If Bobby can give them one ear, can he give them five more? He sure can. One more thing Jim doesn't have to find.

Shopping for paper towels isn't going to be as easy as Jim thinks. You don't just pick up the first roll you see. Uh-uh. You look for the best deal. The more rolls in the package, the cheaper each one is. So the idea is to find the biggest package.

Can Kate find a bigger package than Jim? Wait a minute. Bobby's just found a package of 12. Now that's shopping. Are you getting the idea, Jim? Jim is ready to find some deals of his own.

Scene 5 Getting Help

Here we are at the deli counter. Oh, it's Bobby. Hello, Bobby. What kind of deal can you give Kate and Jim on cold cuts? They don't want 12 pounds. Just one pound of turkey and one pound of roast beef.

Wow. Pie. Oh, my. Which one should we buy? This price isn't too high. Thanks, Bobby. Bye!

Continued

Continued

Scene 5 Getting Help

Continued

Now, Jim. We've got three more things on the list, and we're out of time. Are you going to help me or not? Jim told me he would like to, but he still didn't know where anything was. Then Bobby sat us down and took my list.

Hey! I need that! Do something, Jim! "Relax," he said. And back came Bobby with the milk, pretzels, and bread. Thanks to Bobby, we were back on schedule.

Scene 6 Checking Out

OK. A dollar ninety-nine for the cookies... and \$2.50... that's for the pie, not for Jim! Bobby said our total was \$67.50. Jim offered to pay, but I told him to put his money away and gave Bobby a check.

My friend Bobby wanted to see some ID! All right. Rules are rules. I got out my driver's license. Bobby, it's me, Kate! He finally took my check, and we were finished. On time! Bobby gave me a bag, Bobby gave Jim a bag, and he made sure we didn't forget my breakfast.

Scene 5 Getting Help

Continued

We still needed milk, pretzels, and bread, and it was getting late. Kate said we had five minutes left. She was getting upset again. Bobby told us both to have a seat. "I'll take that list," he said.

Kate was worried, but I wasn't. I knew it would only be a minute, and... there was Bobby. Kate wasn't worried now. And we were done with time to spare.

Scene 6 Checking Out

We were at the finish line. I reminded Bobby how much the pie cost. He told us our total was \$67.50. I was ready with cash, but Kate had already written the check.

Bobby told her the store required identification for checks. She gave him her driver's license. "Yep," Bobby said. "That's you." You can't be too careful, I guess. Anyway, we were ahead by three minutes, and we had gotten all our groceries for the week. And for breakfast, we had pie. Hmm. Pie for breakfast.

Scene 5 Getting Help

Continued

Kate: Now Jim, we've got three more things on the list and we're running out of time. Are you going to help me or not?

Jim: Of course I'm going to help you... I would... I just don't know where these things...

Bobby: Have a seat, please. And... I'll take that list.

Kate: Hey! I need that list! Do something, Jim!

Jim: Relax. Relax.

Kate: Oh. Bobby. He got the milk.

Jim: And the bread.

Kate: And the pretzels! Don't forget the list.

Scene 6 Checking Out

Bobby: One ninety-nine... and... how much for the uh...

Jim: The pie? Right here.

Kate: Remember that's for the pie, not for Jim!

Bobby: That's everything, and your total is \$67.50.

Jim: Oh, I've got it.

Kate: Oh, no, no, no. I've got a check. Here, Bobby.

Bobby: I need an ID for checks.

Kate: An ID! That's crazy. Bobby, it's me, Kate!

Bobby: Yep. That's you. Everything's fine. I'll take that check, and we're done.

Jim: With three minutes to spare.

Kate: Bobby, you've been a big help. Thank you!

Jim: Yes. Thanks, Bobby, and... I'll take that pie.

Bobby: Come back soon!

Scene 5 Getting Help

Continued

Kate is upset now. It's getting late. Is Jim going to be able to help her with those remaining items?

Jim doesn't think so. Oh. Give Bobby the list?

Kate doesn't realize what's happening. Bobby's doing what he does best. There you are, folks. Milk, pretzels, and bread. And the list. That's everything.

Scene 6 Checking Out

All right. Cookies. Pie. The price of the pie? Thank you, Jim. See? Jim can help. Jim is ready to help with the bill, too. But Kate doesn't need help. She already has her checkbook out.

But to pay by check, even Kate needs an ID. Luckily, she has her driver's license. Bobby thinks he recognizes Kate now. Can they really be finished? With time to spare? What a relief. Jim's glad to be getting out of there. It's almost time for another breakfast.

Questions

Scene 1 – Out of Food

- Where are Jim and Kate at the beginning of this scene?
 - in their dining room
 - in their bedroom
 - in their kitchen
 - in the grocery store
- Who got to the kitchen first that morning?
 - We don't know.
 - Kate
 - Jim and Kate arrive at the kitchen at the same time.
 - Jim
- At first, what does Kate want to have for breakfast?
 - toast
 - eggs
 - sandwiches
 - cereal
- Why can't she make herself any toast?
 - She can't find the bread.
 - The toaster is broken.
 - She and Jim ate the bread for dinner the night before.
 - Jim has eaten all of the bread.
- How did Jim eat the bread?
 - He ate three sandwiches the night before.
 - He ate a sandwich the night before.
 - He ate three sandwiches earlier that morning.
 - He made toast and ate it for breakfast.
- Where do Jim and Kate normally keep the bread?
 - in the refrigerator
 - on the counter
 - in the cupboard
 - under the sink
- When do most people eat breakfast?
 - sometime during the day
 - at night
 - anytime
 - in the morning
- When does Jim like to eat breakfast?
 - at night
 - in the morning
 - anytime
 - during the day
- What does Kate decide to eat instead of toast?
 - boiled eggs
 - egg sandwiches
 - scrambled eggs
 - fried eggs
- Why can't Kate make herself scrambled eggs?
 - Kate can't find the frying pan.
 - Jim ate all the eggs the previous night before he had the sandwiches.
 - Jim ate all the eggs that morning for breakfast.
 - Jim ate all the eggs the previous night after he had the sandwiches.
- Where do Jim and Kate normally keep the eggs?
 - on the counter
 - in the refrigerator
 - in the cabinet
 - in the sink
- In this scene, what is the last thing Kate thinks about eating for breakfast?
 - cereal
 - pie
 - eggs
 - sandwiches
- Why can't Kate have a bowl of cereal for breakfast?
 - Jim ate all of the cereal the previous night.
 - Jim ate almost all of the cereal.
 - There are no spoons.
 - There isn't any milk.
- Jim is eating
 - hot cereal
 - cereal Kate gave him
 - cereal with milk
 - the last of the cereal
- What does Jim think of the cereal?
 - He thinks it is very good.
 - He thinks it doesn't taste very good.
 - He doesn't think there is enough for him.
 - He thinks Kate wouldn't like it.
- When the narrator says, "You may already be too late," he means that
 - it may be too late to go shopping for cereal.
 - there may not be any cereal left for Jim.
 - there may not be any cereal left for Kate.
 - it may be too late to eat breakfast.

17. Why does Kate smile at Jim?
 - a) because he eats so much
 - b) because now she knows what to do
 - c) because there is still some cereal left
 - d) because she is happy
 18. What does Kate want to do when she sees that there is no food for breakfast?
 - a) go to a restaurant
 - b) cook something
 - c) skip breakfast
 - d) go shopping
 19. What is Kate going to take along on the shopping trip?
 - a) her list
 - b) the cereal jar
 - c) her breakfast
 - d) a sandwich for Jim
 20. Who is going shopping?
 - a) only Kate
 - b) Jim and maybe Kate
 - c) Jim and Kate
 - d) only Jim
5. What is the first thing Jim and Kate do inside the store?
 - a) Kate gets a shopping cart while Jim looks for groceries.
 - b) Jim gets a shopping cart while Kate looks at the list.
 - c) They each try to get a shopping cart.
 - d) Kate and Jim look for a salesclerk to help them.
 6. How do Jim and Kate finally get a shopping cart?
 - a) Jim waits for Kate to take a cart.
 - b) Kate waits for Jim to take a cart.
 - c) A clerk gives them a shopping cart.
 - d) Jim and Kate find a shopping cart outside the store.
 7. How often has Jim shopped at this grocery store?
 - a) many times
 - b) a few times
 - c) He has never shopped here before.
 - d) We don't know.
 8. How do we know that Kate has shopped at this grocery store before?
 - a) She got the shopping cart.
 - b) She knows her way around.
 - c) She wants to buy everything in 45 minutes.
 - d) She has a list.

Scene 2 – Grocery Shopping

1. When Jim and Kate get to the grocery store, Kate is
 - a) looking for her list
 - b) in a hurry
 - c) ready to have breakfast
 - d) walking slowly
2. What does Jim ask Kate as they are walking in?
 - a) which one of them should get a shopping cart
 - b) whether she is hungry
 - c) whether she remembered the list
 - d) which groceries they need to buy
3. How much time does Kate say they have to do their shopping?
 - a) thirty minutes
 - b) forty-five minutes
 - c) fifteen minutes
 - d) twenty-five minutes
4. Why does Kate want to do the shopping quickly?
 - a) She has only a few things to buy.
 - b) She doesn't like to shop.
 - c) She wants to eat her breakfast while they shop.
 - d) She wants to eat her breakfast after they shop.
9. Which aisle does Kate go to first?
 - a) the frozen-food aisle
 - b) the cereal aisle
 - c) the produce aisle
 - d) the eggplant aisle
10. Whom do Jim and Kate meet in the produce aisle?
 - a) Kate's best friend
 - b) the friendliest clerk in the store
 - c) the slowest clerk in the store
 - d) the best clerk in the store
11. Why can't Bobby shake hands with Jim?
 - a) He is too busy.
 - b) He has too many eggplants in his hands.
 - c) He isn't allowed to shake hands with customers.
 - d) He doesn't know Jim well enough to shake hands with him.
12. Which does Kate not say when she is introducing Jim and Bobby to each other?
 - a) "Jim, this is Bobby."
 - b) "Bobby, this is my husband, Jim."
 - c) "I've known Bobby for a long time."
 - d) "We're in a big hurry."

13. What is the first thing Jim and Kate tell Bobby they are looking for?
 a) grapefruit
 b) fresh peas
 c) eggplant
 d) frozen peas
14. Why doesn't Bobby get them fresh peas?
 a) Bobby's hands are full of eggplants.
 b) Bobby doesn't know where they are.
 c) Jim is going to get them.
 d) The store doesn't sell fresh peas.
15. Why will Kate be surprised if Jim finds any frozen peas?
 a) Jim doesn't know where anything is.
 b) The store doesn't have any frozen peas.
 c) Bobby is going to get the frozen peas.
 d) Jim doesn't like frozen peas.
16. How do Jim and Kate get frozen peas?
 a) Kate gets them from the frozen-food section.
 b) They don't find any frozen peas.
 c) Jim finds them and brings them to the cart.
 d) Bobby finds them and gives them to Jim and Kate.
17. What is Kate's plan for getting the produce?
 a) Jim will wait by the cart, and Kate will get all the produce.
 b) Jim will find the fruit, and she will find the lettuce.
 c) Bobby will find everything.
 d) She will find the fruit, and Jim will find the lettuce.
18. How do Jim and Kate actually get their produce?
 a) Bobby brings them some of the produce, and Kate gets the rest.
 b) Jim and Kate find the produce together.
 c) Bobby brings them all the produce on the list.
 d) Kate finds what they need while Jim stands by the cart.
19. What did Bobby do with the eggplants he had in his hands?
 a) He probably threw them away.
 b) He probably stacked them with the other eggplants.
 c) He probably gave them to a customer.
 d) He probably set them down on the floor.
20. How did Bobby know what Kate wanted to buy?
 a) Jim told him.
 b) Kate told him.
 c) He probably overheard her telling Jim.
 d) He read her list.

Scene 3 – Choosing Products

1. What does Kate call Jim and Bobby in this scene?
 a) her fellow shoppers
 b) her grocery-finders
 c) her friends
 d) her helpers
2. How many people are shopping now?
 a) two
 b) three
 c) one
 d) none
3. What is the next thing on Kate's list?
 a) a can of peas
 b) a bag of beans
 c) a jar of sauce
 d) a box of pasta
4. What is Jim doing while Kate is telling him what they need?
 a) looking around
 b) listening
 c) wondering where the frozen peas are
 d) finding what they are looking for
5. How do Jim and Kate get the pasta?
 a) Bobby reaches out and grabs it.
 b) Bobby runs and gets it.
 c) Jim finds it on the aisle where they are standing.
 d) Jim and Kate never do get the pasta.
6. How does Kate feel when Bobby gives her the pasta?
 a) angry
 b) worried
 c) disappointed
 d) better
7. Where does Kate think the dried beans are?
 a) right beside her
 b) further down the aisle they are standing in
 c) in the next aisle
 d) in the produce section
8. How does Bobby get the dried beans?
 a) He is already holding them in his hand.
 b) He just reaches out and gets them.
 c) He goes down the aisle where they are standing and finds them.
 d) He runs to another aisle for them.

9. How does Bobby feel about helping Jim and Kate?
 a) He is tired of it.
 b) He enjoys it.
 c) He thinks Jim should be doing more.
 d) He would like to go more slowly.
10. What does Kate mean when she says, "I hoped Jim was learning something?"
 a) She hoped Jim was learning how to find things the way Bobby does.
 b) She hoped Jim was learning what kinds of food she likes.
 c) She hoped Jim was learning to be polite, like Bobby.
 d) She hoped Jim was learning how to push a shopping cart.
11. Where do Jim and Kate go after they have found pasta, beans, and sauce?
 a) to the checkout
 b) to the frozen-food aisle
 c) to the produce aisle
 d) to the cereal aisle
12. Who picks out the first two cereals?
 a) Jim
 b) Kate
 c) Jim and Kate together
 d) Bobby
13. Why doesn't Kate like Jim's two favorite cereals?
 a) They have too many vitamins.
 b) They are too expensive.
 c) They are too sweet.
 d) She doesn't like the way the boxes look.
14. What does she say the two cereals taste like?
 a) chocolate and sugar
 b) cookies and candy
 c) vitamins
 d) cardboard
15. What does Jim think of Kate's choice of cereal?
 a) He thinks it is too expensive.
 b) He thinks it tastes like cardboard.
 c) He thinks the box is too small.
 d) He thinks it is fine.
16. Which of these things does Jim like about the next cereal he picks out?
 a) the toy inside the box
 b) its price
 c) the picture on the box
 d) its name
17. Why does Kate object to the third cereal that Jim picks out?
 a) She thinks it's too expensive.
 b) She thinks it's unhealthy.
 c) She doesn't like its taste.
 d) She has never heard of it before.
18. How can Kate and Jim afford the cereal?
 a) They can afford it if Jim doesn't eat too much of it.
 b) They can afford it if they buy a smaller box.
 c) They can afford it if they don't buy anything else.
 d) They can afford it if they have a coupon.
19. How do Jim and Kate get a coupon?
 a) Jim notices a coupon on the shelf.
 b) Bobby gives them a coupon that he has in his apron.
 c) Bobby gives them a coupon that he sees on the shelf.
 d) Kate remembers that she brought a coupon with her.
20. What does Kate say to Bobby when he gives her the coupon?
 a) "It's expensive."
 b) "Thank you, Bobby!"
 c) "We need a coupon."
 d) "Now we can afford the cereal."

Scene 4 – A Variety of Items

1. What is next on Kate's list after cereal?
 a) chips
 b) tortillas
 c) corn
 d) cornstarch
2. What do the things on Bobby's cart all have in common?
 a) They are all on Kate's list.
 b) They are all expensive.
 c) Bobby's likes to eat all of them.
 d) They are all corn products.
3. Which one of these products is on Bobby's cart?
 a) corn cereal
 b) cornstarch
 c) cornbread
 d) frozen corn

4. Which one of these products is not on the cart?
 - a) cornmeal
 - b) corn chips
 - c) dried corn
 - d) canned corn
5. Which product do Jim and Kate want?
 - a) corn on the cob
 - b) cornmeal
 - c) corn tortillas
 - d) corn chips
6. How many ears of corn do Jim and Kate want?
 - a) five
 - b) a dozen
 - c) one
 - d) half a dozen
7. How does Bobby give the corn to Jim and Kate?
 - a) He gives them one ear at a time until they have as many as they want.
 - b) First he gives them one ear, then he gives them five more.
 - c) He gives them a dozen ears and then takes half of them away.
 - d) He gives them six ears at one time.
8. How does Bobby offer the corn products to Jim and Kate?
 - a) He hands each product in turn to Jim and Kate.
 - b) He asks, "Which would you like?"
 - c) He asks, "What do you want?"
 - d) He points at each one without saying anything.
9. Kate wants fresh corn. What other corn product does Jim want?
 - a) He wants canned corn.
 - b) He wants corn chips.
 - c) He wants corn tortillas.
 - d) He doesn't want any other kind of corn.
10. What does Kate want after they get the corn?
 - a) a newspaper
 - b) rolls
 - c) paper towels
 - d) cold cuts
11. How does Kate ask Jim to help her find the paper towels?
 - a) "There they are!"
 - b) "Jim, keep your eyes open for the paper towels."
 - c) "They're cheaper if you buy more than one."
 - d) "Why don't you get a nice big roll?"
12. How many rolls are in the first package of paper towels Jim picks up?
 - a) two
 - b) one
 - c) three
 - d) six
13. Why does Kate say that they should try to find a larger package?
 - a) Bobby will be disappointed if they don't buy a lot.
 - b) Jim and Kate use a lot of paper towels.
 - c) She doesn't like the brand that Jim picked out.
 - d) Paper towels cost less if you buy more than one roll at a time.
14. How many rolls are in the package that Kate gets?
 - a) twelve
 - b) two
 - c) three
 - d) six
15. Who finds the biggest package of paper towels?
 - a) Kate
 - b) Jim and Kate together
 - c) Bobby
 - d) Jim
16. How many more rolls are in Bobby's package than in the largest package Jim finds?
 - a) three
 - b) six
 - c) twelve
 - d) nine
17. How much cheaper per roll are the paper towels Bobby found than the first paper towels Jim found?
 - a) \$1.49
 - b) \$6.00
 - c) \$12.00
 - d) \$0.50
18. When the narrator asks, "Are you getting the idea, Jim?" he means,
 - a) "Are you learning how to find a good deal?"
 - b) "Can you find the next thing on Kate's list?"
 - c) "Do you think those are good paper towels?"
 - d) "Can you find a bigger package than that?"
19. Why does Kate think that Bobby deserves to be employee of the month?
 - a) because he found the paper towels
 - b) because she has known him for a long time
 - c) because he helped them to find a good deal
 - d) because he is friendly

20. What does Kate say she and Jim need to buy next?
- pie
 - cold cuts
 - ice cream
 - toilet paper

Scene 5 – Getting Help

- Where do Jim and Kate go after they have bought the paper towels?
 - to the deli section
 - to the produce section
 - to the frozen-food section
 - to the dairy section
- Why are Jim and Kate surprised when they get to the deli counter?
 - There is no meat in the case.
 - Bobby is nowhere to be seen.
 - Bobby is in the case.
 - The meat is very expensive.
- What is Bobby doing in the case?
 - He is hiding from Jim and Kate.
 - He is taking a nap.
 - He is helping customers.
 - He is working.
- What does Bobby do after he gets out of the refrigerated case?
 - He asks Jim and Kate if they want turkey or roast beef.
 - He asks Jim and Kate how he can help them.
 - He offers them a deal on cold cuts.
 - He asks how many pounds of cold cuts they want.
- What does Kate want?
 - turkey
 - fast food
 - beef
 - a sandwich
- What does Jim want?
 - dessert
 - a hamburger
 - turkey
 - beef
- How many pounds of cold cuts do Jim and Kate buy?
 - twelve
 - one
 - two
 - four
- What does Bobby not do after Jim and Kate give him their order?
 - go back into the case
 - tell them the price of the cold cuts
 - go back to work
 - help them
- How do Jim and Kate feel about pie?
 - They both like it.
 - Jim likes pie, but Kate doesn't.
 - Jim and Kate like pie, but not the kinds the store has.
 - Neither Jim nor Kate likes pie very much.
- What is Kate's favorite kind of pie?
 - lemon
 - apple
 - cherry
 - chocolate
- Which of the following kinds of pie does Jim say he likes?
 - banana
 - cherry
 - chocolate
 - lemon
- How do Jim and Kate find out the price of the pie?
 - Bobby puts a price sticker on a pie.
 - Bobby puts a price sticker on Jim's hand.
 - Bobby tells them the price.
 - Bobby puts a price sticker on Jim's hand and also tells Kate and Jim the price.
- How much does the cherry pie cost?
 - three dollars
 - fifty cents
 - two and a half dollars
 - three dollars and fifty cents
- When Kate says, "What a deal!" she means
 - the price is low
 - the price is high
 - two pies will cost less than one
 - the price must be wrong
- Why is Kate upset after she and Jim get the pie?
 - She has lost her list.
 - She thinks the groceries are too expensive.
 - She doesn't think that the store has the things she is looking for.
 - She has more things to find, and she thinks Jim isn't helping.

16. How many minutes do Jim and Kate have now to finish their shopping?
 - a) ten
 - b) forty-five
 - c) five
 - d) three
17. Why isn't Jim going to help?
 - a) He is upset because he wanted lemon pie.
 - b) He doesn't like to shop.
 - c) He doesn't know where things are.
 - d) He wants Bobby to help instead.
18. How does Kate get the last three items on her list?
 - a) Bobby takes her list and gets the items for her.
 - b) Bobby shows her where each item is.
 - c) She and Jim tell Bobby where to find the items.
 - d) Jim and Bobby find the three items.
19. How do Jim and Kate feel while Bobby is getting the last of the groceries?
 - a) Jim and Kate are both worried.
 - b) Kate is worried, but Jim isn't.
 - c) Neither Kate nor Jim is worried.
 - d) Jim is worried, but Kate isn't.
20. Which item is not on Kate's shopping list?
 - a) cold cuts
 - b) bread
 - c) milk
 - d) pie
4. How does Bobby know the price of the pie?
 - a) He hears Kate telling Jim.
 - b) He sees the price sticker on Jim's hand.
 - c) Jim tells him.
 - d) Kate tells him.
5. The price sticker on Jim's hand is for
 - a) the cookies
 - b) the roast beef
 - c) Jim
 - d) the cherry pie
6. How much is the grocery bill?
 - a) fifty seventy-six
 - b) seventy-six fifty
 - c) sixty-seven fifty
 - d) sixty-five seventy
7. How does Jim want to pay for the groceries?
 - a) with cash
 - b) with a check
 - c) with a credit card
 - d) with an ID card
8. How does Kate plan to pay for the groceries?
 - a) with a credit card
 - b) with a check
 - c) with cash
 - d) She plans to let Jim pay.
9. Why does Jim let Kate pay?
 - a) He has forgotten his wallet.
 - b) He has already spent his money on something else.
 - c) He does not have a check.
 - d) She has already written the check.

Scene 6 – Checking Out

1. Where do Jim and Kate go after they have gotten the pretzels, milk, and bread?
 - a) to the parking lot
 - b) to the checkout
 - c) to where the shopping carts are
 - d) to the deli
2. How does Jim help Bobby?
 - a) He tells him how much the cookies cost.
 - b) He offers to pay for the groceries.
 - c) He checks the time.
 - d) He reminds him of the price of the pie.
3. How much do the cookies cost that Jim and Kate buy?
 - a) \$1.99
 - b) \$2.50
 - c) \$67.50
 - d) \$2.99
10. What does the store require in order to accept a check?
 - a) identification
 - b) a checkbook
 - c) A store employee must know the person writing the check.
 - d) a picture
11. What kind of ID does Kate give to Bobby?
 - a) a credit card
 - b) a letter from her job
 - c) a driver's license
 - d) her checkbook

12. What does Kate say when Bobby asks for ID?
a) "I don't have any ID with me."
b) "You can't be too careful, I guess."
c) "Luckily, I have my driver's license."
d) "That's crazy."
13. Why are Jim and Kate surprised that Bobby asks for ID?
a) Normally, stores don't ask for ID.
b) Kate and Bobby have known each other for a long time.
c) They don't have any ID.
d) Jim and Kate aren't buying very many groceries.
14. Why does Bobby accept Kate's check?
a) He recognizes her picture on the driver's license.
b) He has known her for a long time.
c) Kate and Jim don't have much time left.
d) Kate and Jim don't have any cash.
15. How much time do Jim and Kate have left when Bobby takes the check?
a) 5 minutes
b) 3 minutes
c) 1 minute
d) 10 minutes
16. How long will the groceries last that Jim and Kate bought today?
a) two weeks
b) three days
c) seven days
d) five days
17. Why is Jim glad to be finished shopping?
a) He has to be somewhere in a few minutes.
b) He wants Kate to eat breakfast.
c) He doesn't like shopping.
d) He wants to eat another breakfast.
18. Who says, "Rules are rules"?
a) Bobby
b) Kate
c) Jim
d) the narrator
19. Which of the following is not said to Bobby in this scene?
a) "Bye-bye."
b) "I'll take that pie."
c) "That's crazy."
d) "Right here."
20. What is Kate going to have for breakfast?
a) scrambled eggs
b) toast
c) cereal
d) pie

Narrative Lesson 9-01

Kate's Diary

Saturday, July 6th

It's amazing how fast I run out of food now that I have a husband. Do all men eat breakfast all the time, or is it just Jim? Today I couldn't even eat breakfast until Jim and I went grocery shopping.

I like to shop at Green Fields, the store in the neighborhood where Jim and I used to live. It's not too big, but big enough to have a good selection of the things I buy. I enjoy looking at all the different teas. There are teas from India, China, and Africa; black, green, and herbal teas; teas flavored with cinnamon and orange peel; and teas in painted tins and bamboo boxes. I'm looking forward to trying some new teas once I get my teacup collection unpacked.

We were lucky that Bobby was at the store today. He found just about everything we needed. Jim was no help at all, since he'd never shopped at Green Fields before. But I think he'll learn if he goes shopping by himself. Jim told me he likes to shop alone, because he meets people that way. He says it's almost as much fun as going to the coffee shop.

Sometimes I meet people at the grocery store, too. Just last week I met a Russian woman in the tea aisle. She was looking for Prince Nicholas tea, which she said is very elegant and romantic. I told her she needed to go to a bigger store, and I suggested the one in Jim's old neighborhood. We decided to go there together, since I thought I might like Prince Nicholas tea as well. We found it, and we also met a woman from Lebanon who was looking for ginger tea. Natasha and I helped her find that, and then we all decided to get together for a tea party next week at Christina's house.

This morning, Bobby put our groceries into paper bags with handles. That's my favorite kind of bag. They have straight sides and don't fall over, which makes it easy to stack things inside them. They're also easy to carry. But they take up an awful lot of room in the cupboard while I'm collecting them for recycling. For that reason, I sometimes ask for plastic bags. I can squeeze a lot of those into a small space. Also, I've found that I can carry more of them at one time. Once, I carried eight with one hand! Of course, the bread did get a little squashed. Natasha uses neither paper nor plastic grocery bags. She carries her own bags that expand when you put things in them. What a great idea!

One of the things I enjoy most about shopping is saving money. That's why I joined the Green Fields Saver's Club. I just give my membership card to the cashier when I'm checking out, and I automatically get discounts on certain things. Sometimes I get coupons for related items as well. Once, when I bought a quart of vanilla ice cream, I got a coupon that would give me a discount on a frozen chocolate cake the next time I went shopping. But I couldn't wait. I went back and got the cake right away, and Jim and I had a little party that night.

Another good way to save money is to buy in bulk. I've found that one of my favorite face creams is much cheaper when I buy six at a time. I can do that, since the bathroom in our new apartment has so much storage space. I've already told Jim I'll need all the drawers. And if I keep finding bargains, I can just store them in some of my paper grocery bags.

I think Jim's learning to buy in bulk also. Today, after we bought the paper towels, I heard him asking Bobby if peanut butter was cheaper by the case. What would we do with a case of peanut butter? It turns out that peanut butter is Jim's favorite food. He says he can make fabulous dishes with it that take almost no cooking. Someday soon he's going to make his peanut butter and macaroni casserole for dinner. I told him to put a little jelly in it for me. I'm sure he realizes I'm kidding.

Jim buys a lot of socks, too. In fact, he told me he collects them. I had no idea. I thought that box of unusual-looking socks was left here by the previous tenants, and I gave it to Natasha for her church's rummage sale. Now I have to tell Jim. I'll wait until he's in a good mood, and then I'll brew him a nice cup of Prince Nicholas tea.

Questions

- Paragraph four suggests that Kate is interested in
 - Russia
 - ginger tea
 - Jim's old neighborhood
 - people
- Kate sometimes uses plastic grocery bags because
 - they get bigger when things are put into them
 - they are easier to fill than paper bags
 - they take up little storage room
 - they have handles

Narrative Lesson 9-02

3. Why would Kate like Jim to go shopping by himself?
 - a) She wants him to meet people.
 - b) She wants him to learn where things are.
 - c) She doesn't like to shop.
 - d) She wants Bobby to help him.
4. The phrase "buying in bulk" refers to buying things
 - a) that need to be stored
 - b) that are expensive
 - c) in large quantities to save money
 - d) that aren't needed
5. The last sentence in paragraph eight shows that
 - a) Kate wants Jim to put jelly in the casserole
 - b) Kate doesn't like jelly
 - c) Kate is sure Jim will put jelly in the casserole
 - d) Kate doesn't think Jim will put jelly in the casserole
6. Which of the following is not a reason for Kate to join the Green Fields Saver's Club?
 - a) She likes chocolate cake.
 - b) She likes bargains.
 - c) Members sometimes get discounts.
 - d) Members sometimes get coupons.
7. The phrase "unusual-looking socks" refers to socks that
 - a) aren't meant to be worn
 - b) are ugly
 - c) are expensive
 - d) most people wouldn't wear
8. Kate implies that she, Natasha, and Christina
 - a) are going to be friends
 - b) enjoy the same kind of tea
 - c) live near each other
 - d) like to save money
9. The way Kate bought the chocolate cake shows that she is
 - a) hurried
 - b) impulsive
 - c) careful
 - d) forgetful
10. If Kate bought a case of peanut butter, she would probably
 - a) store it in plastic grocery bags
 - b) make casseroles with it
 - c) give it to Jim
 - d) make sandwiches with it

Jim's Diary

Saturday, July 6th

I went grocery shopping with Kate today. I had never been to that store before, but it wasn't a problem. We had a helper named Bobby. Bobby knows where everything is, and he's fast. He found practically everything on our list for us. I'd like to go back and practice with him some time, because shopping can be complicated.

Take yogurt. There must be 50 different kinds. First you have to decide what brand you want, and whether you want flavored or unflavored. If flavored, which flavor? Full fat, low fat, or no fat? What size? There's even yogurt made of soy instead of milk. But choosing yogurt is not a problem for me. I never eat it.

I like peanut butter, but that calls for decisions too. Crunchy or smooth? With salt or without? Since I buy a jar every week, I can usually go right to what I want. I told Kate that if she ever needs someone to go to the store for peanut butter, I'm her man. So far, peanut butter hasn't been on Kate's list.

Kate likes vegetables. Fresh ones. But buying fresh vegetables is harder than buying them in a can. How can you tell which cabbage is the best one? How do you know if the broccoli's too old? Kate says the secret is to buy only beautiful vegetables. A cabbage should be shiny and smooth; broccoli should be dark green. I still don't understand eggplant, though. It doesn't look like an egg, and I bet you can't cook it like an egg, either. Maybe Bobby can give me some pointers.

I never realized how much reading you have to do when you shop. Kate always reads the nutritional information that's printed on packages to find out whether a food has a lot of sugar or a lot of fat in it. So I do that too. I've learned that if there's a lot of sugar and a lot of fat, I'll probably like it. Kate says that's not the way it's supposed to work.

Shopping requires some math skills, too. There's something called unit pricing that I never paid much attention to before today. Apparently, it's better to buy three rolls of paper towels than to buy two, and it's really wonderful if you can buy twelve. That's because the price of a single roll keeps going down as you buy more of them. I wonder if it would make sense to get a bigger apartment so we'd have enough room to buy huge packages of everything. I'll have to talk to Kate about that.

Some grocery stores are huge, and they sell lots of things besides food. The store in my old neighborhood was like that. Once I picked out a car wax in the automotive section, then went to the magazine section to get something to read while the wax dried. Then I went to the lawn furniture section, where I found a chair to sit on while I was waiting and reading. Unfortunately, the store was out of lemonade, so I had nothing to drink while I sat and waited and read.

That store had a wonderful bakery department. I remember going there early in the morning before work, when racks full of freshly baked breads, bagels and pastries were being rolled out for customers to buy. You could have a cake decorated there, too. The day after Kate agreed to marry me I ordered a small cake for her. It had no words on it, just a big smile.

Since my old supermarket was open 24 hours a day, I sometimes shopped there late at night when I couldn't sleep. Once, around midnight, I was looking for a frozen pizza. I went up and down five or six frozen-food aisles, but couldn't find the pizza. Finally, I gave up and went home. I was so tired from all the walking that I went to sleep right away.

You can meet a lot of interesting people at the supermarket. This is especially likely to happen when Kate asks me to pick up things for her after work. I once had to stop a woman and ask her what almond paste was, and whether I should look for it among the school supplies. She said no, that it was an ingredient in baked goods. Another time, I got into an interesting conversation with a teenage boy about organic vegetables. He told me that they're a lot better for you than sugar and fat. So I compromised. I got a doughnut for me and some organic carrots for Kate.

Questions

- Which of the following does Jim understand well?
 - how to find things in the grocery store
 - how to buy peanut butter
 - how to buy vegetables
 - how to use nutritional information
- Which sentence best expresses Jim's attitude about buying yogurt?
 - He knows which kind he likes best.
 - He cares more about the brand than anything else.
 - He doesn't like to do it very often.
 - The choices involved don't matter to him.
- Jim prefers
 - vegetables to peanut butter
 - sweets to vegetables
 - yogurt to peanut butter
 - eggplant to doughnuts
- Shiny, smooth cabbage is an example of
 - a vegetable that is no longer fresh
 - a vegetable that looks like an egg
 - a good vegetable to buy
 - a vegetable that is dark green
- Jim thinks organic vegetables are good for
 - baking
 - other people
 - snacks
 - breakfast
- Which of the following would not be a reason for Jim to go to the bakery department?
 - He wants to buy almond paste.
 - He needs a birthday cake.
 - He wants something for breakfast.
 - He wants to buy some doughnuts.
- The main idea of the first paragraph is best expressed by which sentence?
 - Bobby did all the grocery shopping.
 - Jim does not enjoy grocery shopping.
 - Thanks to Bobby, the grocery shopping went well.
 - Jim will shop with Bobby from now on.
- It can be inferred from the sixth paragraph that
 - Jim does not understand unit pricing
 - Jim prefers to buy paper towels in single rolls
 - Jim wants to buy things in large quantities
 - Kate wants a bigger apartment
- Jim has had trouble finding what he was looking for
 - at both the new store and his old store
 - when buying yogurt
 - when buying peanut butter
 - only at the new store
- One advantage of shopping at a large grocery store, according to Jim, might be that
 - large stores are always open 24 hours a day
 - a large store probably wouldn't run out of lemonade
 - it would be a good place to go while the wax on the car is drying
 - the store could have everything needed to do a job

Narrative Lesson 9-03

Shopping With Kate

I don't really enjoy shopping. If I need something, I figure out where I can buy it cheaply and conveniently. If I want to buy a book, for example, I go to a Web site, find the best deal I can, order the book, and that's that. When I have to buy new clothes, I drive to the store, grab what I need, and leave. I don't spend time in stores for fun. The less time I waste shopping, the more time I have for things like working or reading.

That doesn't mean I don't like a bargain. If I can get something inexpensively, I will definitely do it, even if it means going to a little extra effort. When Jim and I go shopping for groceries, I sometimes drive out to the superstore on the edge of town. I buy in large quantities there, because things are cheaper that way. The other day I bought 20 quarts of tomato juice for only 99 cents a can. Since then, Jim and I have been drinking a lot of tomato juice. Fortunately, canned goods keep for a long time. Whenever we need tomato juice, we'll have some.

I admit that sometimes I can take things a little far when it comes to saving money. I remember once seeing a sale on lampshades. It was around Christmas time, and I figured I could get all of my Christmas shopping done at once at the lampshade store. So I bought about a dozen of these lampshades and gave them as gifts to the entire family. Grandma got a lampshade with pretty lace trim. Aunt Kathy got a green lampshade to match her curtains, and Uncle John got a sturdy lampshade for his boat. Baby Peter got a very small lampshade to play with. Everyone seemed to like their lampshades, but Jim suggested that maybe from then on he and I should do the Christmas shopping together.

Jim's approach to shopping is very different from mine. He enjoys shopping, and he probably doesn't spend much more money than I do, but he spends a lot of time. If he wants a book, he drives around to different used-book stores to see if they have what he's looking for. While he's there, he looks around to see if there is anything else he wants. Sometimes he enters a store looking for one thing and leaves with something completely different.

I remember once he drove out of town to buy a puppy for my niece. A rainstorm came up, and poor Jim got lost while trying to find the breeder's house. He stopped at a carpenter's shop instead, and wound up buying my niece a wooden dog as a birthday present!

I prefer to go to one big store where I know I can find everything I want. Jim likes to do business at the little stores downtown, where he never quite knows what he's going to find. He says he knows the people who work at those stores. A lot of them have worked in the same place for years. Jim thinks it's more fun to buy from someone he knows. That may be, but it's usually more expensive.

The one thing Jim and I both like is sales. When we read in the newspaper that there is going to be a big sale at a department store, we both get ready. I carefully make a list of the things I need and check to see which ones are going to be on sale. That way I can get in and out quickly and still save money. Jim just looks at what's there. He takes plenty of time to try things on and decide what he wants. Sometimes he doesn't buy anything. But sometimes he sees things he really wants as soon as he walks through the door. When that happens, I try to stop him before he spends too much.

Questions

1. Jim probably wanted to start doing the Christmas shopping with Kate because
 - a) not everyone liked the presents that Kate bought
 - b) Kate bought unusual presents
 - c) Kate spent too much money on presents
 - d) Kate did not buy a present for him
2. At which of the following is Kate least likely to shop?
 - a) an on-line bookstore
 - b) a department store
 - c) a small dress shop downtown
 - d) a very large store
3. Kate's approach to shopping could best be characterized as
 - a) sociable
 - b) careless
 - c) time-consuming
 - d) efficient
4. It can be inferred that the little stores where Jim shops are
 - a) inconvenient
 - b) confusing
 - c) interesting
 - d) crowded

Narrative Lesson 9-04

5. Which of the following fits best with Jim’s way of shopping?
 - a) seeing a handmade tie at a crafts store and buying it
 - b) searching for low-priced ties at a warehouse store
 - c) buying ties along with other clothing at a department store
 - d) planning ahead to buy ties at a sale
6. Kate likes to do all the following except
 - a) shopping with a list
 - b) spending time in small stores
 - c) buying things in bulk
 - d) looking for sales
7. Kate’s and Jim’s shopping preferences are most similar when it comes to
 - a) Christmas shopping
 - b) department stores
 - c) sales
 - d) used-book stores
8. Which answer best summarizes the fifth paragraph?
 - a) Jim bought Kate’s niece something she didn’t want.
 - b) It is difficult to buy a puppy when it rains.
 - c) A wooden dog is as good a present as a puppy.
 - d) Jim bought something he didn’t plan to buy.
9. Which of the following best describes Kate’s attitude toward shopping?
 - a) You don’t know what you might want until you see it.
 - b) It is a good way to pass the time.
 - c) It is a necessary part of life.
 - d) Finding the best deal isn’t important.
10. Kate implies that shopping at a store because you know the people there may not always be
 - a) fun
 - b) a good idea
 - c) easy
 - d) possible

Kate’s Finances

The first time I really came into contact with money, I was maybe five years old. My mother told me that I was going to receive an allowance: 25 cents a week. Twenty-five cents didn’t buy very much, even then. I had to save for two weeks before I could afford to buy a bag of Tootsie Rolls. Still, it was money, and it was mine. I could do whatever I wanted with it.

At the beginning of every week, I got a quarter, or maybe two dimes and a nickel. These coins were something I could hold in my hand, and I could count them over and over to make sure they were all there. Later on, I began to have paper money. I saved for several weeks to be able to trade my coins for one-dollar bills. Also, I got fives and tens a few times a year, on special occasions.

By the time I was eight years old, I was doing chores for my parents around the house, and my allowance had gone up to a whole dollar a week. I didn’t count my coins anymore. Now that I was getting a new dollar bill every week, as soon as I finished sweeping the house, coins were a lot less important. Sometimes I even paid one of my younger sisters a quarter to do some of my jobs for me. A quarter was still a lot of money for them. I had bigger things to deal with.

Of course, when I got older I found out that a dollar a week wasn’t very much money, either. When I was fourteen years old, I had a job that paid six dollars an hour. Every two weeks, I got a paycheck. A check was like a dollar bill—it was just a piece of paper, not something solid like a coin. But it was worth a lot of money. When I cashed one of my paychecks at the bank, I got over \$50 in bills. With that money, I could go to a movie (if I could find somebody to drive me), or go to a restaurant with my best friend, Rebecca, and pay for her meal as well as mine. I didn’t have a checking account, although I could have had one with my parents’ permission. I just had a savings account for the little money I saved.

When I left home, I did get a checking account. I was living in my own apartment, and I wrote checks to pay the electric bill and the phone bill. I had a credit card that I used to buy meals, clothes, books, and records, and I paid that bill with a check also. I have always been careful to pay my credit card bill in full every month, even if it means I can’t go to as many movies or eat in as many restaurants as I might like. Keeping a

credit card balance is a bad idea, because the interest rate is so high.

Living on my own, I learned to pay attention to how much I spent. Even \$50 didn't go very far when I had to pay rent and bills and buy my own food. And I needed a lot more than \$50 the first time I bought a car. It wasn't even a very expensive one!

When I had a regular job, my taxes were withheld from my paycheck, so paying them wasn't difficult. Now that I work as a freelance writer, I have to pay taxes every three months. The first time I did this, I wished I had held on to all those nickels and quarters from my childhood.

Jim and I merged our finances when we got married. Instead of having my own checking account, I now have a joint account with him. Instead of deciding by myself how much to spend, how much to save, and what kind of car to drive, I make these decisions with Jim. He makes sure I don't spend too much money, and I do the same for him.

Sometimes I wish I could go back to my younger days, when I didn't have so many responsibilities and a quarter of my own seemed like a lot of money. But I like making decisions with Jim and taking care of my own finances. I just have to be sure not to spend more money than I have.

Questions

- When Kate says that at one time a check was just a piece of paper to her, she means that
 - it wasn't something she could hold in her hand
 - it wasn't worth anything
 - it didn't feel solid in her hand
 - it was worth less than coins
- The second paragraph differs most from the third paragraph on which topic?
 - what Kate thought about coins
 - what Kate thought about money
 - the way Kate earned money
 - the way Kate spent money
- Kate would most likely agree with which of the following statements?
 - Credit cards are helpful because they allow you to spend more than you earn.
 - A child has no need to manage money.
 - A husband and wife should decide separately how much to spend.
 - Managing money is difficult but satisfying.
- It can be inferred from the fifth paragraph that Kate does not like to
 - pay interest
 - eat in restaurants
 - write checks
 - buy records
- Which of the following things that Kate did as a child does she still do as an adult?
 - pay someone else to work for her
 - count coins
 - get an allowance
 - save money
- The main purpose of the third paragraph is to explain
 - how Kate got her chores done
 - how Kate's finances changed as she grew older
 - how Kate got dollar bills
 - why Kate's allowance went up
- Paragraphs five and six both discuss
 - making large purchases
 - paying bills
 - paying rent
 - using a credit card
- Why didn't Kate have a checking account at the age of 14?
 - She didn't have enough money.
 - She was too young.
 - She didn't have her parents' permission.
 - She doesn't say.
- Kate says that merging finances with Jim involves all of the following except
 - paying bills together
 - deciding together how much money to save
 - sharing a checking account
 - helping each other not to spend too much
- When Kate says, "I had bigger things to deal with," she means
 - she didn't want any more quarters
 - she had other jobs to do
 - a quarter wasn't very important to her
 - she was bigger than her sister

Narrative Lesson 9-05

The History of Shopping

Shopping has changed a lot over the years. Of course, a few thousand years ago, nobody did any shopping at all. If you wanted something, you found it or traded for it or made it yourself. There were no stores in East Africa, where early humans lived.

As trading became more common, some people specialized in it, doing nothing else. Instead of producing anything themselves, these merchants conveyed land and goods from seller to buyer. Eventually, markets developed in ancient villages and cities where farmers and artisans could sell their products. That's how shopping started.

The earliest stores grew out of the stalls in these markets. Cities and towns came to be filled with small shops, each selling a different product. The baker sold bread, the butcher sold meat, and the grocer sold vegetables. Shoppers spent the morning going from store to store, choosing items and negotiating prices. Usually, items were not sold at a fixed price. Instead, the shopkeeper and the customer negotiated until they could find a price they agreed on. If they couldn't agree, the customer went somewhere else.

Small, specialized shops still fill many towns. In these places, people can buy a loaf of fresh bread or a sweet pastry in the morning from their neighborhood baker, just as people did in ancient Rome. Shopkeepers often know their customers and chat with them while helping them find and purchase what they want. In large cities, small, expensive boutiques sell a few select goods to wealthy customers.

Over the course of the 19th century, improved canals, railroads, and roads made it possible to carry more goods over long distances. Small shops began to be replaced by larger establishments. In some small towns in America, a single general store provided for many different customer needs. There, shopping was a social event that took place in the middle of a town. In large cities, department stores began to appear. These offered a wide variety of products, many of them manufactured in newly constructed factories.

When fixed prices were introduced, customers and storekeepers no longer had to negotiate prices. In much of the world, this system now prevails, with only a few things, like art objects and Oriental carpets, still being bought and sold without a fixed price. In many countries, however, negotiating prices is still common.

In the 20th century, changes to shopping continued. Technological advances like refrigeration made possible the modern grocery store, where shoppers can buy all the food they need in a single place. In addition, increased international trade has made more and more products available at lower and lower prices.

Now, most cities are able to provide a rich and varied shopping environment for their residents. In some places, vast markets, located either in buildings or open spaces, offer customers everything from clothing to cheeses. Elsewhere, shopping malls gather a variety of stores under a single roof, and vast superstores offer wide selections and low prices.

Shops, stores, markets, and malls, however, are not the only ways to shop. Almost since trading began, there have been ways for people to shop in their own homes. In the past, for example, peddlers traveled around with packs on their backs, selling what they carried to farmers and others who lived far from town. Today, many people still travel from neighborhood to neighborhood, selling blackberries or sharpening knives. Some also sell things like brushes or cosmetics from door to door.

In modern times, shopping by mail has become another way for people to buy things from home. As early as the 19th century, improved postal service allowed people in many locations to select merchandise out of catalogs. They could order beds, hammers, books, or even whole houses and then have them shipped by railroad. After the telephone was invented, ordering became easier than ever.

Now, at the turn of the 21st century, the Internet offers customers even more choices and greater convenience. Like those who first used catalogs, people are learning yet another method of ordering. They buy sports equipment, furniture, and other products by interacting with the Web sites of manufacturers and retailers. Shoppers can buy tea from China, music CDs from Sweden, comic books from Japan, and handicrafts from all over the world without leaving their homes. They can even buy multimedia language-learning software and take delivery on their browsers, directly over the Internet! Internet technology has created a much larger marketplace for shoppers, but it has also made shopping more individual and less social.

Questions

- Paragraph four explains how
 - goods are sold in large cities
 - one kind of early store continues today
 - bread is usually sold today
 - sweet pastries are made
- Larger stores have been made possible by all of these except
 - improved technology
 - better transportation
 - factories
 - market stalls
- The author implies that shopping can be a social event in a store that
 - is located near a railroad
 - has varied goods for sale
 - requires customers to negotiate prices
 - sells a single product
- All of the following are used in ordering products except
 - mail service
 - computers
 - the telephone
 - art objects
- Which of the following statements is not true?
 - Shopping has always existed.
 - People still shop in small stores.
 - There has been a trend toward larger stores.
 - Shopping on the Internet is convenient but impersonal.
- In former times, peddlers were welcomed mainly because
 - they sold everything that people needed
 - they brought things to people who lived far from stores
 - they made transportation unnecessary
 - they traveled door to door
- At a mall, a customer can always find
 - low prices
 - a cheese store
 - a number of stores
 - open spaces
- Paragraph five explains how
 - small shops became general stores
 - railroads were built
 - stores became bigger
 - prices were decided
- The phrase “specialized shops” refers to
 - bakeries
 - shops that sell a single kind of goods
 - shops where the owner knows the customers
 - shops where expensive goods are sold
- Which of the following is an example of a technological advance?
 - markets
 - art objects
 - specialization
 - railroads

Narrative Lesson 9-06

The History of Money

Obtaining the necessities of life 5,000 years ago was complicated. If you wanted a sheep, for example, you couldn't just go to a livestock breeder and buy one. You had to not only find someone who had a sheep but also offer in payment something that person wanted, like a spear or a goat or a beehive. If all you had was fish, but the sheep owner wanted a beehive, you had to find someone who was willing to trade a beehive for fish. This process could easily become time-consuming.

The solution to this problem was money. Money is something that everyone agrees to use in trade. Thus, if you have some fish and want to buy a sheep, you can simply sell your fish for money and then use the money to buy a sheep. Of course, having money doesn't guarantee that you are going to be able to buy exactly what you want, but it is a step in the right direction.

Over the course of human history, many different things have been used for money. Early money was usually some rare or valuable commodity. At one time, cakes of salt were valuable enough to be used for money. Other commodities that have served as money include tea, tobacco, seashells, and metals like gold, silver, and copper.

As early as 2500 BCE, the Egyptians began producing money in the form of metal rings. The Greeks and the Romans used coins such as the obol, the drachma, and the denarius as a medium of exchange. Their value was determined by the amount of precious metal they contained. Many of these coins still exist. Of course, they are no longer used as money; you couldn't walk into a restaurant in Greece today with a handful of obols and expect to be served a meal.

Eventually, it became too difficult to carry around the amount of metal (or salt, or tea, or tobacco) that was required by the commodity system. A new system—representative money—developed. This money was not itself a valuable commodity, but it could be exchanged for one. Instead of carrying around 10 pounds of gold, a merchant could simply carry a token or bill for that amount.

Paper money, which was invented in China in the 14th century, spread all through the world over the course of several centuries, as increased trade and mobility made convenience more important. And during the 16th century, European traders began

using checks—pieces of paper that could represent any amount of money. Checks were even easier to carry around than a pile of bills.

The representative money system lasted for several hundred years, but eventually it, too, was replaced. In the 20th century, most governments, including the United States, switched to a system of fiat money. This is money that is worth something in trade because people trust that it is. With fiat money, the government doesn't have to own huge quantities of gold or silver to support the value of its money. It can choose how much money it wants to print.

In countries using fiat money, therefore, you cannot go to the government with currency and demand gold or anything similar in exchange. But you will still find it very easy to spend your money on goods and services. In some places, you might even be able to buy a sheep!

Questions

- All of the following can be inferred from the text except
 - money is convenient because it is accepted by everyone
 - travelers in the 14th century preferred coins to paper money
 - some coins can no longer be used as a medium of exchange
 - for the fiat system of money to work, people must trust the government
- Metals like gold and silver were used to make coins because they were
 - common
 - light
 - valuable
 - soft
- According to the author, money has gradually become
 - heavier
 - more valuable
 - less reliable
 - easier to use
- The primary purpose of the second paragraph is to explain
 - why money is necessary
 - how money was developed
 - why money is difficult to use
 - how to buy a sheep

Narrative Lesson 9-07

5. Salt is an example of
 - a) something that has never been used for money
 - b) a precious metal
 - c) representative money
 - d) a commodity
6. The phrase “a step in the right direction” implies
 - a) progress
 - b) correctness
 - c) travel
 - d) exchange
7. Today, all of the following can be used for money except
 - a) coins
 - b) checks
 - c) obols
 - d) bills
8. The author assumes that
 - a) gold can no longer be used as money
 - b) money needs to be supported by something valuable
 - c) if you have money, you can buy whatever you want
 - d) the lighter money is, the better
9. Which sentence best summarizes the first paragraph?
 - a) Thousands of years ago, there were no stores.
 - b) Before money existed, trade was difficult.
 - c) Some things are not suitable for trading.
 - d) Someone without money could not acquire a sheep.
10. Under a system of fiat money, a government
 - a) has control over its money supply
 - b) can change to a commodity system whenever it wishes
 - c) must support the value of its money
 - d) will exchange its money for gold

Grammar: Indefinite Pronouns

When we want to refer to something that we don't know much about, we often use indefinite pronouns. In the previous sentence, the indefinite pronoun “something” stands for the thing we want to talk about without saying exactly what it is.

Indefinite pronouns that refer to unknown people or things include “everybody,” “everyone,” “somebody,” “someone,” “anybody,” “anyone,” “nobody,” and “no one,” as well as “everything,” “something,” “anything,” and “nothing.” All of these pronouns are singular, and each takes a singular verb. We say, “Everyone is here,” and “Anything is possible,” even though both sentences seem to refer to more than one person or thing.

“Everybody” and “everyone,” as well as all of the other “-body/-one” pairs, have identical meanings and may be used as either subjects or objects. It is just as correct to say, “Everybody is here,” as it is to say, “Everyone is here.” The same is true of “I saw nobody” and “I saw no one.”

Another group of indefinite pronouns refer to numbers or quantities of things that have been specified elsewhere. In the sentence “Give us some of the corn,” “some” is such a pronoun. We know that it refers to corn, even though the amount of corn may not be clear.

This group of pronouns includes “all,” “any,” “both,” “each,” “either,” “many,” “none,” “nothing,” “one,” and “some.” Their use is guided by their meanings and by a few simple rules. “All,” for example, is rarely used by itself, but is generally followed by a word or phrase that answers the question, “All of what?” We say, for example, “Jim ate all of the bread,” or “Jim ate all the bread.”

Of the indefinite pronouns referring to numbers and quantities, some are clearly singular—“each” and “one,” for example—and some, like “both” and “many,” are clearly plural. It may not be so obvious that “some” is always used in the plural. To the question “Did Kate find any eggs?” the answer could be either “Yes, she found one” or “Yes, she found some,” depending on how many were found.

“Any” and its compounds—“anybody,” “anyone,” and “anything”—are used in questions and in negative statements. So to the question, “Did Kate find any eggs?” another answer might be “No, she didn't find any.”

Questions

1. When Kate looked for bread in the kitchen, she didn't find _____.
 - a) nothing
 - b) any
 - c) none
 - d) some
2. Almost _____ left in the cereal jar.
 - a) something were
 - b) nothing were
 - c) something was
 - d) nothing was
3. Kate wanted to get _____ on the list.
 - a) none
 - b) some
 - c) everything
 - d) any
4. Jim wanted a shopping cart, so he grabbed _____.
 - a) it
 - b) one
 - c) some
 - d) none
5. Kate and Jim wanted fresh peas, but the store had _____.
 - a) not
 - b) nothing
 - c) none
 - d) neither
6. Lettuce was on the list, so Bobby went to find _____.
 - a) some
 - b) any
 - c) something
 - d) anything
7. Jim liked two cereals, but Kate didn't like _____ of them.
 - a) some
 - b) both
 - c) neither
 - d) either
8. Rolls of paper towels are cheaper if you buy _____.
 - a) nothing
 - b) many
 - c) all
 - d) something
9. At first, Kate and Jim didn't see _____ at the deli counter.
 - a) someone
 - b) no one
 - c) anyone
 - d) all
10. There were several kinds of pie. Jim wanted _____ of _____.
 - a) one/all
 - b) some/all
 - c) none/any
 - d) one/each

Narrative Lesson 9-08

Grammar: Verbals

Verbs are not always used as verbs. Changed to verbals, they might be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. Verbals take one of three forms: infinitive, present participle, and past participle.

To begin, we can look at how the infinitive works as a verbal. In the previous sentence, the infinitive “to begin” is a verbal. It is used as an adverb modifying the verb “look.” In “Kate wanted to go to the store,” “to go” functions as a noun; it tells us what Kate wanted. And in the sentence, “Kate had a cart to hold the groceries,” “to hold” tells us something about the cart, and so it functions as an adjective. Sometimes, “to” is omitted from the infinitive. In the sentence, “Kate would rather eat breakfast than shop,” the infinitive forms “eat” and “shop” are the objects of the verb “would rather.”

Infinitives used as verbals may take various tenses. In the sentence, “Jim was glad to have eaten breakfast,” the infinitive is in the present perfect tense. Infinitives may also be expressed in either the active or the passive voice. This example uses both: “Bobby had to ask Kate for ID, but Kate did not like to be asked.” Finally, infinitives can be made negative by placing “not” before the infinitive: “Kate asked Jim not to buy the cereal.”

Present participle verbals are usually used as adjectives. In the sentence “Pointing, Jim and Kate asked for fresh corn,” “pointing” modifies “Jim and Kate” as an adjective would do. When the present participle is used as a noun, it is called a gerund. An example of this use is “Pointing is a way of saying what you want.”

The past participle, like the present participle, is usually used as an adjective. In “Finished with shopping, Jim went home,” the past participle “finished” modifies “Jim.” There is also a present perfect participle, formed from the present participle of the verb “to have” and the past participle of the main verb: “Having finished shopping, Jim went home.” Either of these participles can be put into the passive voice, as in “Being shown Kate’s ID, Bobby recognized her” and “Having been shown Kate’s ID, Bobby recognized her.”

When a participle, present or past, modifies a noun, the subject of the participle should be the same as the word the participle modifies. The sentence “Looking for corn, Kate hit Bobby with her cart” is correct, because

Kate did both the looking and the hitting. But if we were to change this sentence to make “cart” the subject—“Kate’s cart hit Bobby”—we could not precede it with “looking for corn.” The cart did not do the looking!

Questions

1. “_____ breakfast is my favorite part of the morning,” said Jim.
 - a) Eat
 - b) To eat
 - c) Eating
 - d) Having eaten
2. Jim was sorry _____ any bread for Kate.
 - a) to not leaving
 - b) not to have left
 - c) not to left
 - d) to leave
3. Kate wasn’t able to _____ breakfast before shopping.
 - a) have eaten
 - b) eaten
 - c) eating
 - d) eat
4. _____ breakfast, Jim was not hungry.
 - a) Having eaten
 - b) Not to eat
 - c) Having eating
 - d) Having eat
5. Kate was worried about _____ too long to shop.
 - a) taken
 - b) taking
 - c) to take
 - d) having take
6. Jim was not good at _____ things.
 - a) find
 - b) having found
 - c) finding
 - d) to find
7. Jim and Kate wanted _____ the paper towels.
 - a) to be finding
 - b) to find
 - c) find
 - d) finding

Narrative Lesson 9-09

8. Helped by Bobby, _____ on time.
 - a) everything was found
 - b) the shopping was done
 - c) Kate and Jim got finished
 - d) the groceries were checked out
9. The last thing Kate did was _____ for the groceries.
 - a) to have paid
 - b) paid
 - c) pay
 - d) paying
10. Kate was surprised _____ for an ID.
 - a) to be asking
 - b) not to ask
 - c) to ask
 - d) to be asked

Grammar: Conjunctions

Conjunctions are connectors. The conjunction “and” may connect two words, as in “Jim ate sandwiches and eggs,” or it may connect two independent clauses, as in “Kate went shopping, and Jim went with her.”

In these examples, the two words are equally important, and so are the two clauses. Conjunctions used to connect elements of equal importance are called coordinating conjunctions. Other coordinating conjunctions are “but,” “or,” and “yet.”

Conjunctions may also connect clauses that are not equal, for example, an independent clause with a subordinate, or descriptive, clause. Conjunctions that do this are called subordinating conjunctions. Some examples of subordinating conjunctions are “although,” “because,” “how,” “if,” “that,” “when,” “where,” and “why.”

In the sentence “Jim took a shopping cart although Kate was taking one too,” the most important idea is that Jim took a shopping cart. “Although” introduces a subordinate clause that tells us something more about this idea—that he did it even though Kate was taking one too.

Other conjunctions are used in pairs, to connect words, phrases, or clauses. These are called correlative conjunctions. Some of the conjunction pairs used in this way are “both/and,” “either/or,” “if/then,” “neither/nor,” “not only/but also,” and “whether/or.”

In the simplest case, correlative conjunctions may connect two nouns or two adjectives. An example of this is “Kate bought neither fresh nor frozen peas.” Correlative conjunctions can also connect more complex elements within a sentence. Here, the conjunctions “either” and “or” connect two verb phrases: “Jim had to either choose a cheaper cereal or find a coupon.”

A final type of conjunction is the conjunctive adverb, which not only connects independent clauses but also says something about their relationship to each other. Some conjunctive adverbs are “besides,” “consequently,” “however,” “indeed,” “nevertheless,” “on the contrary,” and “still.”

In the sentence “Bobby was a good clerk; indeed, he had been chosen as employee of the month,” the conjunctive adverb “indeed” tells us that the second clause emphasizes the meaning of the first. Notice that

the two clauses are separated by a semicolon. They can also be written as separate sentences: "Bobby was a good clerk. Indeed, he had been chosen as employee of the month."

Questions

1. _____ Jim nor Kate had eggs for breakfast.
 - a) Nor
 - b) Whether
 - c) Neither
 - d) Either
2. Kate wanted to shop fast _____ she was hungry.
 - a) why
 - b) because
 - c) if
 - d) or
3. Jim and Kate had to hurry; _____, shopping would take too long.
 - a) furthermore
 - b) although
 - c) however
 - d) otherwise
4. _____ Bobby was busy, he had time to help Jim and Kate.
 - a) Although
 - b) Since
 - c) Because
 - d) Nevertheless
5. Kate and Jim wanted to buy _____ fresh or frozen peas.
 - a) both
 - b) neither
 - c) nor
 - d) either
6. Bobby was friendly. _____, he was helpful.
 - a) Moreover
 - b) Otherwise
 - c) However
 - d) Although
7. Bobby found not only the pasta, _____ the beans.
 - a) and also
 - b) but also
 - c) as well
 - d) also
8. "Will you pick out the cereal, _____ shall I?" asked Kate.
 - a) and
 - b) but
 - c) or
 - d) yet
9. Bobby offered Kate and Jim _____ tortillas and chips.
 - a) either
 - b) both
 - c) neither
 - d) no
10. _____ Bobby found many things for them, Jim and Kate got finished on time.
 - a) If
 - b) Even if
 - c) Since
 - d) While

EMPLOYMENT

Contents

Unit 10 Picture Lessons

10-01	Kinds of Jobs	137
10-02	Where and How We Work	138
10-03	Finding a Job	139
10-04	Training	140
10-05	Buying and Selling.....	141
10-06	Serving and Assisting	142
10-07	Building and Creating	143
10-08	Wages	144
10-09	Job Situations.....	145
10-10	Unusual Jobs, Workers, and Tools.....	146
10-11	Review Lesson	147

Unit 11 Video Lessons: A New Job

11-01	Problems with Jim's Job	150
11-02	Finding a New Job	150
11-03	The Resume	152
11-04	The Interview	152
11-05	A Job Offer.....	154

Unit 12 Narrative Lessons

12-01	Kate's Diary	163
12-02	Jim's Diary	165
12-03	Jim's Jobs	167
12-04	Reading with Kate	168
12-05	The History of Employment	170
12-06	The History of Writing	172
12-07	The History of Photography	174
12-08	Grammar: Relative Pronouns	176
12-09	Grammar: Subjunctive Mood.....	177
12-10	Grammar: Prepositions	179

10-01 Kinds of Jobs

- 01 I had to go through many years of college and medical school to get my job.
I travel all over the country to do my job.
I do my job out in the open air.
I spend most of my time at my job in front of a computer.
- 02 As part of my job, I ask, "Where would you like to go?"
As part of my job, I ask, "May I take your order, please?"
As part of my job, I ask, "Can I help you find something in our store?"
As part of my job, I ask, "Where does it hurt?"
- 03 My job is like being a doctor, except I treat animals.
My job is like being a taxi driver, except I drive something else.
My job is like being a priest, except I'm Jewish.
My job is like being a car salesman, except I sell something else.
- 04 Ann wants a job where she can work with children. What kind of job should she get?
Ann wants a job where she can travel all around the world. What kind of job should she get?
Ann wants a job where she isn't constantly using a computer. What kind of job shouldn't she get?
Ann wants a job where she can help save people's lives. What kind of job should she get?
- 05 I couldn't have that job. I'm afraid of heights.
I couldn't have that job. I'm afraid of going so far down into the ground.
I would love that job. I enjoy working with animals.
I couldn't have that job. I would hate to be stuck in a tiny office all day.
- 06 He has always been interested in taking things apart and fixing them. His job allows him to do that.
He has always wished that he were a lumberjack. Unfortunately, he has to work cutting hair.
He loves plants. That is why he enjoys this job so much.
He has always liked things to be clean. Now he can use his broom and mop and vacuum cleaner to make sure that they are.
- 07 As a lawyer, my job is to argue my case convincingly before the court. I am good at my job.
As a housekeeper, my job is to clean other people's rooms. I am good at my job.
As a housekeeper, my job is to clean other people's rooms. I am not very good at my job.
As a doctor, my job is to help people stay healthy. I am good at my job.
- 08 I enjoy my work because I am building something that will last for a long time.
I enjoy my work because I am helping young people to learn.
I enjoy my work because I am helping people to feel safe and secure.
I enjoy my work because I am making delicious food for people to eat.
- 09 I wear a uniform to do my job.
I wear protective gear to do my job.
I wear an expensive suit to do my job.
I wear a swimsuit to do my job.
- 10 My job requires that I be strong enough to lift heavy objects.
My job requires that I be good at drawing and thinking.
For my job, I must have a good voice.
For my job, I must be friendly and have a good sense of humor.

10-02 Where and How We Work

- 01 This is where a farmer works.
This is where a professional athlete works.
This is where a cook works.
This is where an airplane pilot works.
- 02 This is a tool a construction worker might use.
This is a tool a gardener or farmer might use.
This is something a software engineer might use.
This is something a cook might use.
- 03 This is a tool a construction worker or a tailor might use.
This is a tool a tailor or a hair stylist might use.
This is something a judge might use but a construction worker shouldn't.
This is a tool a construction worker might use but a dentist shouldn't.
- 04 He works at a blue-collar job.
He works at a white-collar job.
She works at a blue-collar job.
She works at a white-collar job.
- 05 This is a job for an electrician.
This is a job for a mother and a father.
This is a job for a garbage collector.
This is a job for a firefighter.
- 06 I am a painter who paints houses. These are my tools.
I am a painter who paints paintings. These are my tools.
I am a musician who plays in an orchestra.
This is what I use.
I am a musician who plays in a rock band.
This is what I use.
- 07 This job requires a lot of paperwork.
This job requires a lot of tools.
This job requires a lot of travel.
This job requires a university education.
- 08 Products and supplies are stored here.
Goods and products are produced here.
Crops are grown here.
White-collar employees work here.
- 09 This person needs a hammer.
This person needs a chain saw.
This person needs a tow truck.
This person needs a dishwasher.
- 10 I wanted to be a fisherman because I love the ocean, but I don't like the smell of fish. So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a teacher because I love to be with children, but I didn't go to college. So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a race-car driver because I love cars, but I couldn't drive well enough. So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a writer because I love books, but I couldn't get anything published. So I decided to do this instead.

10-03 Finding a Job

- 01 If you want to be a salesperson, you might look for a job here.
If you want to be a waiter, you might ask about a job here.
If you want to be a farmer, you might look for a job here.
If you don't know what kind of job you want, you could start by looking here.
- 02 I am strong and physically fit. I could work as a furniture mover.
I am friendly and outgoing. I could work as a waitress.
I am a highly trained scientist. I could work in my field of expertise.
I am creative and artistic. I could work for a design company.
- 03 This can be a good way to look for jobs. Many employers will post job openings here.
If you see a job that interests you, sometimes you can call to get more information.
Some jobs require you to apply in person.
This is not a good place to look for a job.
- 04 Employers want to know about training and past work experience. That is why he is preparing his resume.
A good resume has lots of information on it and looks good. This is a good resume.
A poor resume has very little information on it and doesn't look good. This is not a good resume.
This is an activity that most people don't have on their resume.
- 05 If you apply for a job at a company, you may have a job interview, like this.
Don't forget to take your resume!
For a job interview, you should be dressed nicely. This is a good way to be dressed.
For a job interview, you should be dressed nicely. This is not a good way to be dressed.
- 06 At a job interview, you should always be polite. This is not a good thing to do.
For a job interview, you should always be on time. If you are scheduled for nine o'clock, this is a good time to arrive.
The interviewer may ask you questions.
At a job interview, you should be polite and helpful. This is a good way to greet your interviewer.
- 07 I would make a good delivery man. I have worked at a similar job.
I would make a good day-care worker. I have worked at a similar job.
I would make a good software engineer. I have a lot of experience with computer programming.
I would make a bad chef. Usually, I just prepare microwave dinners.
- 08 I would like a job with a good salary, so I can afford to buy this.
I would like a job with health insurance in case I need to have this done.
I would like a job with fun people, so I will have a chance to do this.
I would like a job with no overtime, so I have plenty of time to do this.
- 09 When you're a carpenter, you need to be careful, so this doesn't happen.
When you're a day-care worker, you have to be good with kids, so this doesn't happen.
When you're a waitress, you can't be clumsy, or this may happen.
When you're a lawyer, you have to be very convincing, or this may happen to your clients.
- 10 You've got the job. You can start on Monday.
I'm sorry, we don't have a position for you at this time.
How soon can you start?
I can start in two weeks.
How soon can you start?
I can start on Wednesday.

10-04 Training

- 01 Most people go to elementary school at this age.
Most people go to high school at this age.
Most people go to college at this age.
No one goes to school at this age.
- 02 You can learn how to do some things by taking a class.
You can learn how to do some things by reading a book.
You can learn how to do some things by watching someone else.
Some things you can only learn by doing them yourself.
- 03 This job requires a degree from medical school.
This job requires a degree from law school.
This job requires an education degree or a teacher's certificate.
This job probably does not require any degree.
- 04 She is getting training at college.
He is getting training at technical school.
He is getting training on the job.
She is teaching herself, without any help from anyone.
- 05 He is an apprentice. This is how he is learning a trade.
His job requires very little training.
He is using distance learning. This is how he is acquiring job skills over the Internet.
He is taking lessons. This is how he is learning to be a skilled player.
- 06 This is a good student. He is paying attention in class.
This is a bad student. He is not paying attention in class.
If you are a good student, you will get grades like this.
If you are a bad student, you will get grades like this.
- 07 She knows a lot about movies. This makes her good at her job.
She knows a lot about movies. This has no effect on her job performance.
He was trained to repair watches. This makes him good at his job.
He was trained to repair watches. This has no effect on his job performance.
- 08 To do this, you need to have a standard driver's license.
To do this, you need to have a special driver's license.
To do this, you need a pilot's license.
You don't need a license to do this, but it is a good idea to get lots of practice first.
- 09 This class is being taught in an elementary school.
This class is being taught in a high school.
This class is being taught in a college or university.
This class is being taught at an obedience school.
- 10 You are training to be a pilot. At some point, you might use this.
You are training to be a hair stylist. At some point, you might use this.
You are training to be a baker. At the beginning of your training, your cakes might look like this.
You are training to be a baker. At the end of your training, your cakes might look like this.

10-05 Buying and Selling

- 01 I would like to sell some bananas. I have more than I need.
I don't need to buy or sell bananas. I have just the number that I need.
I would like to buy some bananas. I don't have as many as I need.
I don't need to buy or sell bananas. I'm not in the fruit business.
- 02 If you let people know about your product by advertising, this should happen.
If you don't let people know about your product and don't advertise, this could happen.
This might be a good piece of advertising.
This probably isn't a very good piece of advertising.
- 03 My products are for children.
My products are for women.
My products are for people with pets.
My products are for everyone.
- 04 I bought something for ten dollars. If I sell it for this amount, I will make a profit.
I bought something for ten dollars. If I sell it for this amount, I will suffer a loss.
I bought something for ten dollars. If I sell it for this amount, I will break even.
I have an old car that's worth five hundred dollars. If I trade it for this, I will have made a very good deal.
- 05 Each of these women has something that the other wants. They can trade.
This man does not have enough money to buy what he wants.
This man has enough money to buy whatever he wants.
This woman has something that her friend wants, but she doesn't want to trade.
- 06 A farmer grows wheat here.
A clerk sells flour here.
A cook bakes pastries here.
A salesperson sells stoves here.
- 07 This man works at a grocery store. He buys food wholesale.
This man shops at a grocery store. He buys food retail.
This man works at a car dealership. He buys many cars at once.
This man is buying a car at a dealership. He only needs one.
- 08 This consumer is buying a product.
This consumer is buying a service.
This salesperson is selling a product.
This person is producing a product.
- 09 In Florida, there is a large demand for this.
In Florida, there is little demand for this.
In Norway, there are few of these.
In Norway, there are many of these.
- 10 This salesperson sells things in his store.
This person sells things door-to-door.
This person buys and sells stocks on the stock market.
This person is selling her car by putting up a sign.

10-06 Serving and Assisting

- 01 May I take your order?
Can I help you find something?
How would you like me to cut it?
Here are your tickets.
- 02 This is what a waiter does after the customers sit down but before he brings them their food.
This is what a waiter does after he takes the customers' orders but before he gives them the check.
This is what a waiter does after he serves the customers their food but before he clears the table.
This is what a waiter does after he gives the customers their check but before he can seat new customers at the table.
- 03 If this is what you drive, you work as a pizza delivery person.
If this is what you drive, you work as a package delivery person.
If this is what you drive, you work as a police officer.
If this is what you drive, you work as a chauffeur.
- 04 You would take this to an automotive body shop.
You would take this to a dry cleaner's.
You would take this to an electronics repair store.
If this breaks, there is no place to take it.
- 05 Welcome to my store. Can I help you find anything?
Do you have something like this, only larger?
This is the largest shirt we have.
Please ring up this shirt for me. I would like to buy it.
- 06 This is when she would say, "Thank you."
This is when he would say, "You're welcome."
This is when he would say, "Excuse me."
This is when she would say, "I'm sorry."
- 07 I'm a waitress. This is where I do my job.
I'm a street musician. This is where I do my job.
I'm a concert musician. This is not a place where I could do my job.
I'm an usher. This is where I do my job.
- 08 As a manager, I help supervise these people.
As a foreman, I help supervise these people.
As a summer-camp counselor, I help supervise these people.
As a coach, I help supervise these people.
- 09 I am a secretary. Part of my job is to answer this.
I am a secretary. Part of my job is to open and read these.
I am a secretary. Part of my job is to write letters and e-mails on this.
I am a secretary. Part of my job is to assist her.
- 10 A reporter writes stories for this.
A screenwriter writes the dialogue for this.
A novelist writes this.
A technical writer writes this.

10-07 Building and Creating

- 01 A cook begins with this and creates a delicious meal.
A window washer begins with this and turns it into a sparkling window.
A tailor begins with this and makes it into a dress.
An artist begins with this and creates a beautiful painting.
- 02 A carpenter begins with lumber and uses it to create this.
A bricklayer begins with bricks and mortar and uses them to create this.
A road-builder begins with rocks and asphalt and uses them to create this.
An author begins with ideas and experiences and uses them to create this.
- 03 This car is in the design phase. It has not yet been built.
This car is in the testing phase. It has not yet been sold.
This car is in the production phase. It is being built.
This car has been produced. It is now ready to be sold.
- 04 This job requires only a safety helmet.
This job requires both a safety helmet and safety goggles.
This job requires a full safety suit.
This job doesn't require any safety equipment.
- 05 The only part of this house that has been finished is the foundation.
The foundation of this house is finished, and it has been framed.
This house is nearly finished, but it doesn't have siding.
This house is entirely finished. It is ready for a family to move in.
- 06 This car needs to be taken to a tire store.
This car needs to be taken to a body shop.
This car needs to be taken to an automobile glass shop.
Nothing is wrong with this car. It is ready to drive.
- 07 Humans have had the technology to make these for thousands of years.
Humans have had the technology to make these for only about a hundred years.
Humans have had the technology to make these for only about fifty years.
Humans have had the technology to make these for only about ten years.
- 08 This is handcrafted.
This is built on its owner's property.
This is produced in a factory.
This is produced in a factory and assembled in its owner's home.
- 09 This is a tool for nailing things together.
This is a tool for screwing things together.
This is a tool for demolishing something.
This is a tool for sawing something into pieces.
- 10 This is a quick and efficient way to produce a lot of things that are all the same.
This is a slow way to produce a few unique things.
This produces a lot of energy.
This doesn't produce a lot of energy.

10-08 Wages

- 01 I am paid an annual salary to do my job.
I am paid hourly wages to do my job.
I receive a sales commission to do my job.
This is not a job; it is a hobby.
- 02 My taxes pay for this.
My utility bill pays for this.
My telephone bill pays for this.
This is free.
- 03 If you are a beginning employee, you might work here.
If you are an important executive, you might work here.
If you are a beginning employee, you might drive this car.
If you are an important executive, you might drive this car.
- 04 This is your gross income.
This is how much you are paying in taxes.
This is your net income.
This is the signature on your paycheck.
- 05 Before you deposit the check, you have to endorse it.
The check is for this much money.
I would like to take out this much cash.
After I take out the cash, I will deposit this amount in my checking account.
- 06 I just got a raise. I used to make \$10 an hour. Now I make \$12 an hour. My pay has been increased by this much.
I just took a pay cut. I used to make \$10 an hour. Now I make \$9 an hour. My pay has been cut by this much.
A year ago, a certain product cost \$100. Since then, there has been inflation. How much might it cost now?
A year ago, a certain product cost \$100. Since then, there has been deflation. How much might it cost now?
- 07 A year ago, I put \$1000 in the bank. The bank pays me interest. How much might I have in the bank now?
A year ago, I put \$1000 in the bank. The bank charges a monthly fee. How much might I have in the bank now?
If I want to buy something and don't have cash, I might pay with this.
If I buy something and pay a \$1000 installment every month from January through October, it will cost me a total of this much.
- 08 I make less than ten dollars an hour. I might be doing a job like this.
I make between \$150,000 and \$200,000 a year. I might be doing a job like this.
I make more than a million dollars a year. I might be doing a job like this.
I don't have any money, but I make money for other people.
- 09 I've invested some of my money in the stock market, so I keep track of the market's performance by reading this.
I don't want to invest my money in the stock market. I want something I can hold in my hand, like this.
When there is a bull market, the price of stocks is going this way.
When there is a bear market, the price of stocks is going this way.
- 10 People give me a tip after I carry their luggage to their hotel room.
People give me a tip after I serve them their meal in a restaurant.
People give me a tip after I drive them to where they want to go.
My company pays me for the work I do, but they don't give me a tip.

10-09 Job Situations

- 01 He is arriving in the morning and punching in. She is leaving in the evening and punching out. This is a common time for employees to take their lunch break.
A workday is typically this long.
- 02 This man likes his job. His morale is high. This man hates his job. His morale is low. This woman has her own office. She has some private space.
This woman works in a cubicle. She does not have very much space.
- 03 These people are unhappy with their wages. They are on strike.
This man does not have a job. He is unemployed. This man has just been hired. He is eager to start work.
This man's job will probably last only a few weeks, and then he will have to find another one.
- 04 These people are working the night shift. These people are working the day shift. This man can choose his own hours. He telecommutes.
This man never knows when he is going to be called to work. He must always be ready.
- 05 These employees are taking a coffee break. These workers are on their lunch break. These people are all driving home from work at the same time. It's rush hour.
Nobody is working today. It's a holiday.
- 06 This employee works part-time. That means she might only work this many hours each day. This employee works full-time. That means that she works about this many hours each day. This employee works full-time. She also works some overtime in order to earn extra money. This person works different amounts according to the time of year. She doesn't have a single work schedule.
- 07 Most companies offer vacation time to their employees. That means their employees can do this.
Most companies offer a health plan to their employees. That means their employees can do this.
Most companies offer a pension plan to their employees. That means their employees will have plenty of money at this point in their lives. Some companies offer child care. That means that while the parents are working, their children can do this.
- 08 This man has retired after many years of work. He will not be working for the company anymore.
This man was injured while working on a construction site. He will not be able to work for a few weeks.
This man is young and healthy, but he is on vacation from his job at the factory. He will go back to work tomorrow.
This boy is too young to work. When he grows up, he wants to be a cowboy.
- 09 He is the subordinate. He follows the instructions that he receives from his boss, who is in charge. She is the boss. She gives instructions that are followed by her subordinates.
She is self-employed. She doesn't have a boss or subordinates.
He has many subordinates. He is the president of the company.
- 10 This job is seasonal; it is done only in the winter. This job is seasonal; it is done only in the summer. This job is not seasonal; it is the same year-round. This job is seasonal; it is done only in the fall.

10-10 Unusual Jobs, Workers, and Tools

- 01 This woman is a computer programmer.
She can do her work at home.
This woman has a job outside of the home,
but right now she is at home cleaning.
This woman sells cosmetics. She does her
work in other people's homes.
This woman runs a day care in her home.
She does her work at home.
- 02 I'm not going to work today. I am sick.
I'm not going to work today. Today is a holiday.
I'm not going to work today. I'm taking
a vacation.
I'm never going to work again.
- 03 I do my job at night.
I don't know when I'll have to do my job.
I do my job early every morning.
I do my job every Sunday morning.
- 04 People watch me while I do my job.
After I have completed my work, people
look at it.
After I have completed my product, people
use it.
If I do my job well, my customers look good.
- 05 I sell something that people like to eat.
I sell something that people like to wear.
I sell something that people like to read.
I'm not selling anything.
- 06 I bring mail to people's houses.
I bring food to people's houses.
I bring the newspaper to people's houses.
I take garbage away from people's houses.
- 07 I clean other people's houses.
I watch other people's children.
I clean other people's clothes.
I cook other people's food.
- 08 I can do my job at home; I am a writer.
I can do my job at home; I am a mother.
I can do my job at home; I am an artist.
I can't do my job at home; I am a carpenter.
- 09 Instead of a trash can, a carpenter might use this.
Instead of a straw broom, a janitor might use this.
Instead of a pickup truck, a furniture mover
would use this.
Instead of a push lawnmower, a landscaper might
use this.
- 10 In this job, part of the money you earn is in tips.
In this job, part of the money you earn is in
commissions.
Money isn't important to this person.
This animal is not paid for his work.

10-11 Review Lesson

- 01 I had to go through many years of college and medical school to get my job.
I travel all over the country to do my job.
I do my job out in the open air.
I spend most of my time at my job in front of a computer.
- 02 I wanted to be a fisherman because I love the ocean, but I don't like the smell of fish.
So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a teacher because I love to be with children, but I didn't go to college.
So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a race-car driver because I love cars, but I couldn't drive well enough.
So I decided to do this instead.
I wanted to be a writer because I love books, but I couldn't get anything published.
So I decided to do this instead.
- 03 I am strong and physically fit. I could work as a furniture mover.
I am friendly and outgoing. I could work as a waitress.
I am a highly trained scientist. I could work in my field of expertise.
I am creative and artistic. I could work for a design company.
- 04 This class is being taught in an elementary school.
This class is being taught in a high school.
This class is being taught in a college or university.
This class is being taught at an obedience school.
- 05 If you let people know about your product by advertising, this should happen.
If you don't let people know about your product and don't advertise, this could happen.
This might be a good piece of advertising.
This probably isn't a very good piece of advertising.
- 06 Welcome to my store. Can I help you find anything?
Do you have something like this, only larger?
This is the largest shirt we have.
Please ring up this shirt for me. I would like to buy it.
- 07 A carpenter begins with lumber and uses it to create this.
A bricklayer begins with bricks and mortar and uses them to create this.
A road-builder begins with rocks and asphalt and uses them to create this.
An author begins with ideas and experiences and uses them to create this.
- 08 People give me a tip after I carry their luggage to their hotel room.
People give me a tip after I serve them their meal in a restaurant.
People give me a tip after I drive them to where they want to go.
My company pays me for the work I do, but they don't give me a tip.
- 09 This man likes his job. His morale is high.
This man hates his job. His morale is low.
This woman has her own office. She has some private space.
This woman works in a cubicle. She does not have very much space.
- 10 This woman is a computer programmer. She can do her work at home.
This woman has a job outside of the home, but right now she is at home cleaning.
This woman sells cosmetics. She does her work in other people's homes.
This woman runs a day care in her home. She does her work at home.

Video Lessons: A New Job

Scene 1 Problems with Jim's Job

When Jim came home that day, he looked gloomy. He said he hated his job. Oh, no. I told him to sit down and tell me about it.

Jim said it wasn't the photography, it was those babies. He was tired of taking pictures of crying babies all day. He showed me some of them. They were pretty bad. "I like those pictures over there," I said. "Those are creative. These are depressing."

Then Jim pulled out a frightening rubber shark. He said he used it to make the babies laugh. Jim! That will scare them to death! I told him I wasn't happy with his job either—especially not with the pay. And I hated it that he couldn't be home on weekends.

But I had an idea. We needed to find him a new job. "Wait," said Jim. "Not another job in a studio." No. The perfect job.

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

Jim started looking through the want ads. In no time, he found three jobs he liked. I asked him if they were nearby. He said yes. And what about the pay? Jim thought the pay would do. "Then you should call," I said. Jim agreed. But he didn't get it. You should call now. Then he got it.

The first phone call didn't go well. Someone had already gotten the job. And the second job wasn't even full-time—it was every other week. That was no good.

Continued

Scene 1 Problems with Jim's Job

I had had an awful day at work. Kate asked me what was wrong, and I told her I hated my job. Why? I sat down on the couch to explain.

"I like taking photographs, but not of babies," I said. "Especially not of crying babies. Look at these pictures." They were bad, Kate agreed. She liked my more creative work there in the living room. Yeah. I had enjoyed taking those, but these...

I showed Kate the shark toy I used to make the kids laugh. She grabbed it. Whap! That shark was terrifying them, she said. We started talking about my job. She didn't like my job either. The pay was too low. The hours were too long. And I was never home on weekends.

Suddenly, Kate was smiling. We were going to find me a new job, she said. Well, that was settled. But I didn't want another studio job. Kate promised it would be a better job.

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

This was amazing. In just a few minutes I had found three ads that looked promising. Kate hoped those jobs weren't too far away. I told her they weren't, and when she asked about the pay, I said it seemed fine. Kate suggested that I call them. Mmm hmm. Good idea. She suggested that I call them right now. Oh. Now.

I didn't have much luck at first. One job had been taken. The second was no good either. It was only part-time. I didn't want that.

Continued

Scene 1 Problems with Jim's Job

Jim: Hey.
 Kate: What's wrong?
 Jim: I hate my job.
 Kate: Oh, no. Why?
 Jim: I wanted to be a photographer, so I could do something creative.

Jim: And I like taking photographs, but not of babies. Especially not of crying babies. Look at these pictures.
 Kate: Oh, no. These are pretty bad. But I like those pictures over there on the wall. Those are creative. These are depressing.

Jim: Right. I even did my shark routine to make them laugh... I'm going to bite your toes off!
 Kate: Jim! That will scare them to death! You know, I'm not happy with your job, either.
 Jim: Right. I don't get paid enough...
 Kate: No, and you work too many hours.
 Jim: Right.
 Kate: And you're never home on weekends.
 Jim: That's the worst part.

Kate: Do you know what we're going to do tomorrow?
 Jim: Find a new shark for me?
 Kate: No. Find a new job for you.
 Jim: Ah. Wait... not another job in a studio.
 Kate: No. The perfect job.
 Jim: Oh.

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

Jim: Uh-huh. Uh-huh. Honey, I just found three jobs. Good ones.
 Kate: Are they close by?
 Jim: Yeah, all of them.
 Kate: And what about the pay?
 Jim: The pay seems fine.
 Kate: Ooh, then you should call for an interview.
 Jim: Oh yeah, good idea.
 Kate: You should call now.
 Jim: Oh. Now. Right.

Jim: Yes, I see. Thank you very much. Job's already taken.
 Kate: Hmm.
 Jim: No, no. I don't think so. Bye. Part-time... every other week.

*Continued***Scene 1 Problems with Jim's Job**

Look at this man. He's had a bad day at work. But Jim doesn't have a hard job. He just takes pictures of babies all day. Kate wants to know what's wrong.

Evidently, the babies cry. And they don't stop. Jim's a good photographer, but he's not good with crying babies. Oh. There's an unhappy one. Jim would like to be more creative and take photographs like these.

But he does try to be creative with the children. He tries to make them... laugh? That's not going to make them laugh. Thank you, Kate. It's not just the babies that are a problem. Kate's unhappy because Jim has to work such long hours. On the weekends, he's always at the studio, making babies cry.

But Kate has an idea. Jim is going to get a new job. And this one won't involve babies.

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

Jim has no trouble finding jobs he likes in the want ads. Everything about them sounds good. He tells Kate that they're convenient and that they pay well. Jim likes reading the ads. But if he wants to get a job, he should probably make some calls. He should probably make some calls right now.

Unfortunately, the first job has already been taken. Another turns out to be only part-time. How discouraging.

Continued

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

Continued

But the third call sounded promising. An interview at a newspaper? Tomorrow? Bring your resume? My husband... a photojournalist! Now we need to fix your resume. Come on!

Scene 3 The Resume

"Here it is," said Jim. Oh. This resume doesn't look very good. It looks very old. Where's all the work you've been doing for the past five years? The first part looked all right: "James Harris studied photography in college and was the photo editor of the college newspaper."

Jim grabbed the computer and added something about the photo contest he had won recently. Then I thought of his experience supervising employees. Jim thought that was good, too. "What about your portfolio?" I asked him. Updated last month. All set. Jim thought he was finished, but he was wrong.

We needed to practice for the next day. "I'm ready," he said. Wrong again. Put on the clothes you'll be wearing tomorrow for the interview. And don't forget to brush your hair.

Scene 4 The Interview

Jim had put on his business clothes but not his business personality. No, no, no. "Try again," I said, "and this time be more professional."

I put my glasses on and tried to shake his hand. But Jim just walked in and sat down. "You walked right by me," I said. "And you didn't introduce yourself! Go back out again." We'll get this right. Ready. Hel-... Oh, no. This was going from bad to worse. Go on. Out. Maybe he'll get it right this time.

Continued

Scene 2 Finding a New Job

Continued

Then, good news: the third one, a newspaper job, was still open. An interview tomorrow at 10:00? Bring my resume? Great. Kate was happy. But she also thought we had some work to do on my resume.

Scene 3 The Resume

I pulled up my resume on the laptop and showed it to Kate. She wasn't happy anymore. She said that I hadn't been keeping it up to date, and we needed to include things I had done recently. Kate liked the education part of my resume, which describes my work on the college newspaper.

Then I remembered that I had won the photo contest last year. Kate wanted to write that I supervise people at my current job. Sounded good. She asked about my portfolio, and I told her it was in great shape. So then I figured that was it. Not exactly.

Kate wanted to practice the interview. OK. I'm ready. But that wasn't all. She wanted a dress rehearsal. Fine. Whatever it takes.

Scene 4 The Interview

I walked in ready to go. Yes Ma'am! Whatever this job requires, I've got it! My manner wasn't quite what Kate had in mind. She wanted me to act more businesslike. Yeah, OK.

The second time, I was cool. "Hello, Katherine," I said, and sat down. I really hadn't noticed her hand out there. And calling her Katherine was evidently a mistake. Yeah, I'm... sor-... Yeah... OK... Yeah. Do it again... Right.

Continued

Scene 2 Finding a New Job*Continued*

Kate: No.

Jim: It is? Honey, the job's still open.

Kate: Oh!

Jim: An interview tomorrow at 10? Bring my resume? Great. Thank you.

Kate: An interview! Wonderful! Now we need to fix your resume.

Scene 3 The Resume

Jim: Here it is.

Kate: Oh. This resume doesn't look very good. It looks very old. Where's all the work you've been doing for the past five years?

Jim: I've been meaning to put that in.

Kate: The first part is fine. You studied photography in college, and you were the photo editor of the college newspaper.

Jim: Right. Oh, I need to say that I won that photo contest last year.

Kate: And under "Experience," we want to say that you supervise employees at your current job.

Jim: I like that.

Kate: What about your portfolio?

Jim: Updated last month. All set.

Kate: Great.

Jim: So we're done.

Kate: No, we need to practice for the interview.

Jim: OK... I'm ready.

Kate: No. Put on the clothes you'll be wearing tomorrow. I'll be in the office. And don't forget to brush your hair.

Scene 4 The Interview

Jim: I am ready for my interview.

Kate: No, no, no. Try again, and this time be more professional.

Jim: More professional. Got it.

Jim: Hello, Katherine.

Kate: You walked right by me. And you didn't introduce yourself. Go back out. Let's try this again.

Jim: Sorry. I just...

Kate: Go on.

Jim: But I...

Kate: Out.

Jim: Right. Out.

*Continued***Scene 2 Finding a New Job***Continued*

But Jim won't have to go back to the want ads. The third call is successful. A newspaper wants him to come in for an interview, with his resume. Kate likes that. Jim would make a good photojournalist. But first he needs to revise his resume.

Scene 3 The Resume

Oh. This does need some work. It turns out that Jim hasn't added anything to his resume in a long time. He needs to think about what he's been doing since he took pictures for the college newspaper. He probably shouldn't say too much about the babies and that rubber shark. Maybe he shouldn't include that at all.

He did win a photography contest. That's creative. And he has some supervisory responsibility with his current job. An employer will pay attention to that. Kate wants to know about Jim's portfolio. It's in good shape. Great. All finished. No?

Kate wants to practice the interview? Jim's ready. Apparently not. He's not dressed right... and his hair's a mess.

Scene 4 The Interview

Jim's dressed up, and he's full of energy. A little too much energy, Kate thinks. She tells him to try again, with less energy.

The second time, Jim is so relaxed he forgets to shake Kate's hand. Or introduce himself. One more time. Less relaxed. The third time is... Oh, oh! Now that would make the babies laugh. But Kate isn't laughing. Will Jim ever get this right?

Continued

Scene 4 The Interview

Continued

“Hello, Ms. Harris,” Jim said, and introduced himself. “It’s a pleasure,” I said. “Please sit down.”

Scene 5 A Job Offer

I turned on the light and started my questions. Why did he want to be a photojournalist, I asked. To impress his wife. I see. I asked why he was right for us, and he pointed to his resume. No! Bad, Jim!

He leaned back and said he had the experience we needed. And when could he start work? In two weeks. “All right then,” I said. “Any questions for me?” Nope. I leaned over. You need to have questions. Ask about the salary. Uh, what would the salary be? I made up a salary I thought he would like.

I leaned over again. Benefits! Jim asked about the benefits package, and I told him about the health insurance, life insurance, pension plan, and vacation the newspaper offered.

Jim, there’s more! Overtime! Weekends! “My wife hates it when I work overtime.” Then tell your wife not to worry. “I don’t think she’s worried,” said Jim. He asked for more advice, but I didn’t think he needed any more. “You’ve got the job,” I told him. “I think your wife will be pleased.”

When Jim got home the next day, he had some good news. No more shark. I gave my photojournalist a kiss. I was impressed.

Scene 4 The Interview

Continued

The next time, I took Kate’s hand, greeted her, and told her my name. I know she liked this because she asked me to sit down.

Scene 5 A Job Offer

I was ready for whatever she was going to ask. First she asked why I wanted the job. I told her that photojournalists had always impressed my wife. When Kate asked why she should hire me, I tried to show her. Ouch! She slapped my hand!

From a safe distance, I pointed out how qualified I was. When could I start? In two weeks. Did I have any questions? No, no questions. Wrong answer, Kate told me in a low voice. But what should I ask? I should ask about salary. OK. I asked about the salary. Oh. That’s more than I currently make.

Then she said I should ask about benefits. Um, what about benefits? “Health insurance,” Kate replied, “life insurance, a pension plan, and vacation.” Wow. More than I expected.

Kate suggested that I ask about the hours. I told her that working overtime and weekends might cause problems with my wife. She said my wife shouldn’t worry. What a wonderful job! Should I ask anything else? Apparently not. Kate told me the job was mine. Wait till I tell my wife!

When I got home the next day, I had big news. I wouldn’t be needing the shark anymore. No more crying babies for this photographer!

Scene 4 The Interview*Continued*

Jim: Hello, Ms. Harris. I'm Jim Harris.

Kate: It's a pleasure to meet you.

Jim: Thank you.

Kate: Please sit down.

Jim: All right.

Scene 5 A Job Offer

Kate: So, why do you want to be a photojournalist?

Jim: Well, my wife has always liked photojournalists.

Kate: I see. Why are you right for this job?

Jim: Well, you can see here...

Kate: No!

Jim: You can see from my resume that I have the experience and education you need.

Kate: And when can you start?

Jim: In two weeks.

Kate: All right then. Any questions for me?

Jim: Nope. No questions.

Kate: You need to have questions for me.

Jim: I do?

Kate: Ask about the salary.

Jim: Salary. Um, what would the salary be?

Kate: I would say around \$40,000.

Jim: Mmm. That's fine.

Kate: Ask about benefits!

Jim: Right. Uh, what about benefits?

Kate: Health insurance, life insurance, a pension plan, and vacation.

Jim: Oh. Oh, very nice.

Kate: There's more! Overtime! Weekends!

Jim: My wife hates it when I work overtime.

Kate: Then tell your wife not to worry.

Jim: I don't think she is worried. What else?

Kate: You've got the job. I think your wife will be pleased.

Jim: Honey!

Kate: What happened? Oh. Oh, Jim!

Scene 4 The Interview*Continued*

Look at that! Practice makes perfect. They'll finally get to start the interview.

Scene 5 A Job Offer

Jim likes being interviewed by his wife. If he gets this job, she'll be impressed. Why is he qualified to be a photojournalist? Well, Kate should know. That's in his resume. Right there. Hey! Jim shouldn't point.

He tells Kate his qualifications. Then he tells her he can start work in two weeks. Kate has no more questions, but Jim's surprised to learn that he is supposed to have questions of his own. He's supposed to ask about salary, for example. So he does. And the salary's not bad.

He's also supposed to ask about benefits. OK. What benefits does the newspaper offer? Oh. Health insurance, life insurance, a pension plan, and vacation. That's generous.

Now Jim needs to ask about overtime and weekend work. Kate says that with this job there will be no problem with overtime and weekends. Kate will be glad to hear that. What else should he be asking? Nothing. Kate tells him he has the job. Congratulations, Jim!

Look at this man. He has some good news. Remember the rubber shark? Photojournalists don't need rubber sharks!

Questions

Scene 1 – Problems with Jim’s Job

1. What was Jim doing before he came home?
 - a) sitting on the couch
 - b) working
 - c) making babies laugh
 - d) taking pictures of a shark
2. How does Jim feel when he gets home from work?
 - a) happy
 - b) tired
 - c) creative
 - d) unhappy
3. Why is Jim unhappy?
 - a) He had a bad day at work.
 - b) He does not like taking pictures.
 - c) He lost his job.
 - d) Kate doesn’t want to talk to him.
4. How does Jim feel about his job?
 - a) He likes it.
 - b) He hates it.
 - c) He thinks it is too creative.
 - d) He thinks it is too hard.
5. How does Kate show she is interested in Jim’s problem?
 - a) She asks him about the shark.
 - b) She asks him to show her some pictures.
 - c) She asks him to tell her about it.
 - d) She reads the newspaper to him.
6. What is Jim’s job?
 - a) He is an artist.
 - b) He takes care of babies.
 - c) He is a teacher.
 - d) He is a photographer.
7. Jim enjoys
 - a) making babies cry
 - b) being creative
 - c) taking pictures of babies
 - d) taking pictures of sharks
8. What does Jim take pictures of at his job?
 - a) Kate
 - b) sharks
 - c) babies
 - d) living rooms
9. How does Kate think Jim’s pictures of a crying baby look?
 - a) depressing
 - b) creative
 - c) funny
 - d) frightening
10. What kind of pictures would Jim prefer to take?
 - a) pictures of older people
 - b) pictures that show creativity
 - c) pictures that make people laugh
 - d) pictures that terrify people
11. Where does Jim keep some of the creative pictures he has taken?
 - a) under the couch
 - b) at the studio
 - c) on the wall
 - d) in another room
12. How does Jim try to make the babies laugh?
 - a) with funny pictures
 - b) with a rubber shark
 - c) by telling them stories
 - d) by dancing for them
13. How do the babies respond to Jim’s shark routine?
 - a) They don’t respond.
 - b) They laugh.
 - c) They grab the shark.
 - d) They cry.
14. Why doesn’t the shark make the children laugh?
 - a) It is frightening.
 - b) It is too small for them to see.
 - c) It doesn’t look like a real shark.
 - d) Jim doesn’t sound like a shark.
15. How does Kate feel about Jim’s job?
 - a) She likes his job, but she doesn’t like the shark.
 - b) She doesn’t like his job, and she wishes he would get a new one.
 - c) She doesn’t really care about his job one way or the other.
 - d) She doesn’t like his job, but she doesn’t think he can find anything better.
16. What is one thing that Kate doesn’t mention about Jim’s job?
 - a) the overtime
 - b) the pay
 - c) the location
 - d) the weekend work
17. What can’t Jim do because of his job?
 - a) go on a weekend vacation
 - b) talk to Kate
 - c) look for a new job
 - d) take creative pictures in his free time

18. What does Kate think she and Jim should do?
 - a) get a shark toy that isn't so frightening
 - b) ask for a raise for Jim
 - c) find Jim a new job
 - d) start their own photography studio
19. Which of these things does Jim not want?
 - a) more creativity
 - b) fewer hours
 - c) less weekend work
 - d) another studio job
20. What kind of job does Kate say they are going to get for Jim?
 - a) the perfect job
 - b) a job that is fun
 - c) an easier job
 - d) a better-paying job
6. What does Jim mean when he says that the pay will do?
 - a) It is much higher than at the old job.
 - b) It is enough.
 - c) It is not enough.
 - d) He will have to find out how much the new job pays.

7. What should Jim do next?
 - a) keep reading about the jobs in the paper
 - b) keep looking for other jobs
 - c) quit his old job
 - d) call about the new jobs
8. What does Kate tell Jim to do next?
 - a) make some phone calls now
 - b) make some phone calls later in the day
 - c) make some phone calls the next day
 - d) look for more jobs in the newspaper
9. What does Jim do after Kate tells him to make the calls right away?
 - a) He goes to get something to eat.
 - b) He goes to make the phone calls.
 - c) He tells her that he will make the calls later.
 - d) He says that it would be more polite to wait a few days.
10. What is the problem with the first job Jim calls about?
 - a) The pay isn't enough.
 - b) The ad was a mistake.
 - c) It has already been taken.
 - d) It is only part-time.
11. What is the problem with the second job?
 - a) It is part-time.
 - b) It is too far away.
 - c) It requires overtime.
 - d) It requires some studio work.
12. How do Jim and Kate feel after the first two phone calls?
 - a) angry
 - b) hopeful
 - c) satisfied
 - d) discouraged
13. Which of the following statements about the third job is true?
 - a) It is already taken.
 - b) It is still available.
 - c) It involves taking pictures of babies.
 - d) It is located far away.

Scene 2 – Finding a New Job

1. Why is Jim reading the paper?
 - a) He wants to spend time with Kate.
 - b) He enjoys reading the paper.
 - c) He is looking for a photograph.
 - d) He is looking for a job that he would like.
2. Which of the following statements is true?
 - a) Kate finds some jobs for Jim in the paper.
 - b) There aren't many jobs for photographers in the paper.
 - c) Jim has no trouble finding jobs in the want ads that he would like.
 - d) Jim has to look for a long time before he finds any jobs that look good.
3. How many jobs for photographers does Jim find in the want ads?
 - a) four
 - b) one
 - c) two
 - d) three
4. What is the first thing Kate wants to know about the three jobs Jim has found?
 - a) whether they are nearby
 - b) whether the pay is good
 - c) whether they are creative
 - d) whether they require overtime
5. What else does Kate ask Jim about the jobs?
 - a) whether they require overtime
 - b) whether they are still open
 - c) whether the pay is good
 - d) whether they are creative

14. The third job Jim calls about is with
 a) a portrait studio
 b) a newspaper
 c) a television station
 d) a camera store
15. How does Jim apply for the newspaper job?
 a) He will mail the newspaper his resume.
 b) He will wait to be called back.
 c) He arranges an interview.
 d) He promises to call again the next day.
16. When is Jim's interview?
 a) the next morning
 b) the next afternoon
 c) in two days
 d) the same day
17. What is Jim told to bring to the interview?
 a) his portfolio
 b) his camera
 c) Kate
 d) his resume
18. What will Jim's job be if he is hired?
 a) He will be a photojournalist.
 b) He will be a journalism photographer.
 c) He will be an editor of photography.
 d) He will be a newspaper journalist.
19. What do Jim and Kate need to do before the interview?
 a) check the newspaper again
 b) work on Jim's resume
 c) find Jim's resume
 d) make some more calls
20. Who suggests that Jim fix his resume?
 a) no one
 b) whoever was talking to Jim on the phone
 c) Kate
 d) Jim
- Scene 3 – The Resume**
1. What does Jim look at on the computer?
 a) Kate's resume
 b) his college newspaper
 c) his portfolio
 d) his resume
2. What does Kate say about Jim's resume when she first sees it?
 a) "This resume looks good."
 b) "This resume doesn't look very good."
 c) "This resume doesn't need much work."
 d) "Hey! This is my resume!"
3. When the narrator says that Jim's resume needs some work, he means that it's not
 a) on the computer
 b) correct
 c) old
 d) complete
4. What does Kate say is missing from the resume?
 a) Jim's work experience in recent years
 b) Jim's work experience in college
 c) Jim's educational record
 d) prizes and awards Jim has won
5. What has Jim been meaning to do?
 a) update his portfolio
 b) change the education part of his resume
 c) add his recent work experience to his resume
 d) print a copy of his resume
6. When did Jim last update his resume?
 a) yesterday
 b) two years ago
 c) five years ago
 d) last month
7. What does Kate say is included in the resume?
 a) Jim's hobbies
 b) Jim's current salary
 c) a list of equipment Jim can work with
 d) Jim's educational record
8. What did Jim do while he was in college?
 a) He studied journalism and won a photography contest.
 b) He studied photography and worked on the college newspaper.
 c) He studied photography and journalism.
 d) He studied photography and exhibited his photographs.
9. What was Jim's job at the college newspaper?
 a) He was the photo editor.
 b) He was a photojournalist.
 c) He was the assistant editor.
 d) He was a supervisor.
10. What has Jim done recently that he wants to add to his resume?
 a) He became an editor.
 b) He taught a photography class.
 c) He was promoted to chief photographer.
 d) He won a photo contest.

11. What else does Jim do that Kate wants to add to his resume?
 - a) He takes more photographs than anyone else at the studio.
 - b) He handles the money at his job.
 - c) He supervises other employees at his job.
 - d) He takes pictures of babies.
 12. What should Jim not include in his resume?
 - a) his previous jobs
 - b) his college education
 - c) his supervisory experience
 - d) his experience with babies and rubber sharks
 13. What job has Jim held, other than studio photographer?
 - a) We don't know.
 - b) He has worked as a newspaper reporter.
 - c) He has worked as a teacher.
 - d) He has worked as a camera salesman.
 14. What does Jim need in addition to his resume?
 - a) the photo that won the contest
 - b) a letter from the college newspaper
 - c) a portfolio of his work
 - d) a picture of himself
 15. Why does Jim say that his portfolio is in great shape?
 - a) It has some of his creative work.
 - b) Kate thinks that it looks good.
 - c) It has all of his old college photos.
 - d) He just updated it last month.
 16. What does Kate want to do when the resume is finished?
 - a) She wants to go over Jim's portfolio.
 - b) She wants to practice the interview.
 - c) She wants Jim to call and confirm the interview time.
 - d) She wants Jim to get a good night's sleep.
 17. What does Jim say when he finds out Kate wants to practice the interview?
 - a) "I've been meaning to do that."
 - b) "Great."
 - c) "I like that."
 - d) "OK. I'm ready."
 18. What does Jim mean when he says Kate wants a dress rehearsal?
 - a) Kate wants him to wear the clothes he will be wearing at the interview.
 - b) Kate wants him to wear a uniform.
 - c) Kate wants to wear a dress.
 - d) Kate wants Jim to bring the rubber shark.
 19. What does Kate tell Jim to do other than put on his interview clothes?
 - a) She tells him to brush his teeth.
 - b) She tells him to brush his hair.
 - c) She tells him to clean his shirt.
 - d) She tells him to bring his resume.
 20. Why is a resume so important to Jim?
 - a) It lets employers know how well he can write.
 - b) It lets employers get to know him without an interview.
 - c) It lets employers know about his work experience and education.
 - d) With a resume, he doesn't need a portfolio.
- Scene 4 – The Interview**
1. What is Jim wearing for his interview?
 - a) clothes he would wear to the office
 - b) clothes he would wear at home
 - c) clothes he would wear to work in the yard
 - d) clothes he would wear to play sports
 2. The clothes Jim is wearing are normally referred to as
 - a) old clothes
 - b) business clothes
 - c) casual clothes
 - d) sports clothes
 3. Is Jim ready for his interview when he first walks in?
 - a) Yes, because he acts very professional.
 - b) No, because he doesn't know what the job requires.
 - c) No, because he doesn't act businesslike.
 - d) No, because he hasn't brushed his hair.
 4. What does Jim have too much of when he first walks in?
 - a) ideas
 - b) professionalism
 - c) questions
 - d) energy
 5. When Jim enters the first time, he calls Kate
 - a) Kate
 - b) Katherine
 - c) Ma'am
 - d) Ms. Harris
 6. What doesn't Kate like about Jim's first entrance?
 - a) his manner
 - b) his hair
 - c) his clothes
 - d) his resume

7. What does Kate not think Jim should do to improve on his first entrance?
 - a) use his hands more
 - b) be more professional
 - c) be more businesslike
 - d) have a little less energy
8. What does Kate say to Jim when he comes in the first time?
 - a) "Call me Ms. Harris."
 - b) "Be more professional."
 - c) "Wear different clothes."
 - d) "Be more energetic."
9. How does Jim act when he walks in the second time?
 - a) He is more energetic and sociable.
 - b) He is exactly the same as he was the first time.
 - c) He is cooler and more relaxed.
 - d) He does what Kate wants him to do.
10. When Jim walks in the second time, he forgets to
 - a) wear his business clothes
 - b) say Kate's name
 - c) sit down
 - d) shake Kate's hand
11. What does Jim call Kate the second time he walks in?
 - a) Katherine
 - b) Katie
 - c) Ma'am
 - d) Ms. Harris
12. Why was it a bad idea for Jim to call his wife Katherine?
 - a) Katherine is not her real name.
 - b) Kate will not be doing the real interview.
 - c) Kate doesn't say.
 - d) He should have waited for her to introduce herself.
13. What does Kate tell Jim to do after he sits down?
 - a) She tells him to find his resume.
 - b) She tells him to answer some questions.
 - c) She tells him to call her Kate.
 - d) She tells him to get up and come in a third time.
14. What does Jim do the third time he enters?
 - a) He makes Kate laugh.
 - b) He falls on the floor.
 - c) He falls on the desk.
 - d) He falls into the chair.
15. What is Kate probably starting to say when Jim falls down?
 - a) "Help me remember your name."
 - b) "Help me finish this interview."
 - c) "Hello."
 - d) "Help yourself to a chair."
16. After Jim falls down, Kate tells him to
 - a) stand up and shake her hand
 - b) go back out and try again
 - c) lie there while she calls a doctor
 - d) sit down and begin the interview
17. What does Jim not do when he walks in the fourth time around?
 - a) take Kate's hand
 - b) greet Kate
 - c) tell Kate his name
 - d) hand Kate his resume
18. This time, Jim calls his wife
 - a) Ms. Harris
 - b) Honey
 - c) Katherine
 - d) Kate
19. What does Kate then ask him to do?
 - a) go out and try again
 - b) remain standing and answer some questions
 - c) sit down
 - d) give her his resume
20. What mistake does Jim make the fourth time around?
 - a) He is too cool.
 - b) He doesn't make any mistakes.
 - c) He isn't professional enough.
 - d) He has too much energy.

Scene 5 – A Job Offer

1. How does Kate interview Jim?
 - a) She reads his resume.
 - b) She gives him a form to fill out.
 - c) She asks him questions.
 - d) She tells him to talk about himself.
2. What does Kate do before she asks her first question?
 - a) She asks Jim for his resume.
 - b) She turns on the light.
 - c) She puts on her glasses.
 - d) She moves her chair.

3. How does Jim feel about being interviewed by his wife?
 - a) He is impressed by her.
 - b) He doesn't know what to say to her.
 - c) He likes it.
 - d) We don't know.
4. What is the first question Kate asks Jim?
 - a) "How much do you know about photojournalism?"
 - b) "What is your previous work experience?"
 - c) "Why are you right for this job?"
 - d) "Why do you want to be a photojournalist?"
5. Why does Jim want to be a photojournalist?
 - a) Photojournalists make a lot of money.
 - b) He would like to impress his wife.
 - c) He is tired of taking pictures.
 - d) He isn't sure.
6. Next, Kate asks,
 - a) "Why do you want to impress your wife?"
 - b) "How much do you know about photojournalism?"
 - c) "Why are you right for this job?"
 - d) "What other jobs have you held?"
7. How does Jim answer this question?
 - a) He tells Kate about his work for the college newspaper.
 - b) He points to his resume, which is in his hand.
 - c) He tells Kate about his work experience.
 - d) He points to his resume, which is on Kate's desk.
8. Why was it a bad idea for Jim to point at his resume?
 - a) Kate doesn't say.
 - b) He shouldn't expect Kate to read his resume.
 - c) He should have his own copy of the resume.
 - d) The answer to the question is not in Jim's resume.
9. How does Jim tell Kate about his qualifications?
 - a) He tells her that he supervises others.
 - b) He tells her about the contest he won.
 - c) He tells her they are described in his resume.
 - d) He tells her about his college education.
10. How soon can Jim start his new job?
 - a) right away
 - b) in two weeks
 - c) whenever Kate would like
 - d) Jim will have to ask at his old job.
11. What does Jim say at first when Kate asks if he has questions?
 - a) "Nope."
 - b) "No questions, Ma'am."
 - c) "Yes. Do I have the job?"
 - d) He doesn't say anything.
12. How does Kate respond when Jim says that he has no questions?
 - a) She asks him more questions.
 - b) She tells him to go out, come back in, and start over.
 - c) She tells him that he has the job.
 - d) She leans over and tells him that he needs to have questions.
13. What is the first thing Kate tells Jim to ask about?
 - a) benefits
 - b) salary
 - c) overtime
 - d) weekend work
14. About how much does Kate say Jim will make at his new job?
 - a) less than he makes at his present job
 - b) thirty thousand dollars
 - c) forty thousand dollars
 - d) whatever he makes at his present job
15. Which of the following statements is true?
 - a) Jim isn't sure how much he makes now.
 - b) Forty thousand dollars is less than Jim makes now.
 - c) Forty thousand dollars is about what Jim makes now.
 - d) Forty thousand dollars is more than Jim makes now.
16. Which of the following benefits does Jim's new job not offer?
 - a) child care
 - b) a pension plan
 - c) vacation time
 - d) health and life insurance
17. What does Kate say about overtime and weekends?
 - a) Jim's job may require some overtime, but he won't have to work on weekends.
 - b) Jim's new job won't require him to work overtime or weekends.
 - c) Jim's job may require some weekend work, but he won't have to work overtime.
 - d) We don't know whether Jim's new job will require overtime and weekend work.

18. What does Kate tell Jim at the end of his interview?
- a) She tells him he won't be offered the job.
 - b) She tells him he has the job.
 - c) She tells him she is impressed.
 - d) She tells him to call back.
19. What does Jim hear at his real interview the next day?
- a) that he will get a phone call telling him whether he got the job or not
 - b) that he needs a rubber shark for his job
 - c) that he won't get the photojournalist job
 - d) that he will get the photojournalist job
20. How does Kate congratulate her husband when she finds out he got the new job?
- a) She promises to cook his favorite meal.
 - b) She throws away the rubber shark.
 - c) She gives him a kiss.
 - d) She tells Jim that she is proud of him.

Narrative Lesson 12-01

Kate's Diary

Wednesday, July 10th

Jim has found a wonderful new job. I knew he could do it. When I was working at my old job as a career counselor, I learned that the most successful job applicants are the ones who love what they do. That is certainly true of Jim.

As a matter of fact, I loved my job as a career counselor. Every day, I had a new opportunity to help someone. Some of the people I worked with were like Jim. They didn't want to make a complete career change—they just wanted a different job in the field where they were already employed.

The first thing I usually did with a client was to find out what was wrong with the old job. With Jim, that was easy. He told me he was bored with taking pictures of babies all day. When he tried to make the job more interesting with his rubber shark, he just made it worse.

I also talked with clients about what they liked to do. Did she like to work outside or at a desk? Would he rather work with people or alone? Was it better to follow a routine or deal with new challenges every day? Jim knew what he wanted: the freedom to do something creative.

Still, Jim didn't know exactly what kind of job he was looking for. A lot of people don't. They need to see what's available. I remember a young woman who was frustrated with her office job. She told me she wanted to be around beautiful things. When she looked at the newspaper ads, she noticed a job in a gift store. She took the job and then got the owner to let her sell the work of local artists. Eventually, she started a shop of her own.

When Jim looked at the ads in the paper, he was surprised at how many possibilities there were. One ad was for a newspaper job. He had always liked the idea of working for a newspaper but had never actually tried to do it.

I never found jobs for my clients, nor did I make any phone calls for them. It was important that they do those things for themselves. I only pushed them in the right direction. I had to push Jim a little bit to get him to call some employers about the jobs he found in the paper. Sometimes people hesitate to make that first contact. There's always the chance they could be disappointed.

In fact, Jim was disappointed with his first two phone calls. But the third call, the one to the newspaper, went better. We were both happy, but that was only the beginning.

Once a client found a job that was appealing to him, I tried to help him obtain it. I did this mostly by helping him present himself as the right person for the position. We always started with his resume.

One of my clients wanted a job editing cookbooks. He had never done that before, but he had other qualifications. He had graduated from cooking school, and he was an experienced chef. Besides, he had written several newspaper and magazine articles on food. We rewrote his resume to show that his language skills and his knowledge of cooking qualified him for the job. He got the job and edited two prize-winning cookbooks.

Jim was qualified for the newspaper job, but he needed a resume that showed he was. We brought his resume up to date by putting in his current experience. We made sure to mention anything that showed creativity or responsibility, like winning a photography contest or supervising employees. Jim's college experience was relevant, too. After all, he was the photo editor of the college newspaper!

Even with a good resume, an applicant can't be sure she's going to make the right impression. The interview is crucial. That's why I always liked to practice with my clients. One woman tried very hard at her practice interview. She wanted a job as a travel agent, and I told her to dress the part. I was pretty surprised when she turned up wearing a Hawaiian muumuu and several leis.

But Jim knew what I meant. He looked very handsome in his jacket and tie, and his manners were perfect. I just had to remind him of a few things, such as remembering to introduce himself and to ask questions. And not to scare the interviewer by falling down!

Questions

1. When Kate wrote that she pushed her clients in the right direction, she meant she
 - a) helped them understand what they wanted
 - b) found jobs they would like
 - c) contacted the appropriate employers
 - d) looked in the paper to see what jobs were available

2. The purpose of the first paragraph is to tell the reader
 - a) why Jim loves what he does
 - b) why Kate was not surprised that Jim found a good job
 - c) why Jim's new job is wonderful
 - d) why Kate liked her old job
3. Why does Kate think job interviews are important?
 - a) Interviews provide an opportunity for the applicant to get dressed up.
 - b) During the interview, applicants can talk about their recent accomplishments.
 - c) Interviews are a good way for applicants to present their qualifications.
 - d) Interviews can help the applicant make a good impression.
4. If Jim's resume is not up to date,
 - a) he may not be aware of all the job possibilities
 - b) he may not appear qualified for a job he wants
 - c) he may not seem to like what he does
 - d) his interview will not go well
5. The point of the story about the young woman who got a job in a gift store is that
 - a) it is important to have a cooperative employer
 - b) the classified ads can help if you know exactly what you want
 - c) if you follow your inclinations, you may end up with a satisfying career
 - d) someone who likes beautiful things is likely to find a good job
6. If someone asked Kate for help in finding a new job, she would first ask
 - a) whether the person was aware of all the possibilities
 - b) about the person's present job
 - c) whether the person's resume was up to date
 - d) what the person enjoyed doing
7. The purpose of the last paragraph is to tell the reader
 - a) that dressing well is an important part of interviewing
 - b) that Jim should be careful not to fall down in the real interview
 - c) that asking questions is good manners
 - d) that although Jim presented himself well, he still needed some advice
8. When Kate says that rewriting a resume can help an applicant get a job, she is assuming that
 - a) the person is lacking some qualifications
 - b) the person is basically qualified
 - c) the person has experience with the job
 - d) the person has language skills
9. With which of the following statements is Kate likely to agree?
 - a) People can find out what they like to do during a job interview.
 - b) Someone who is not happy in a job needs to change careers.
 - c) An up-to-date resume is more important than good interviewing skills.
 - d) A job applicant may not realize how many possibilities there are.
10. Kate uses the phrase "dress the part" to refer to
 - a) wearing a muumuu and several leis
 - b) wearing clothes appropriate to the job one wants
 - c) wearing a jacket and tie
 - d) wearing what one likes

Narrative Lesson 12-02

Jim's Diary

Wednesday, July 10th

Today, I interviewed for a new job. I had to go downtown, to the offices of the Daily Observer. I had never actually visited a newspaper before, although I've always wanted to work for one. The woman I had to talk to, the city editor, worked on the 9th floor. But before I could go anywhere in the building, the security guards wanted to look inside my briefcase. I was embarrassed. My lunch was taking up most of the room.

The guards thought everything, including my lunch, was OK. I signed the log, got a visitor's badge, and sat down to wait for Ms. Martin. While I was waiting, I took a few pictures of the people in the lobby. It doesn't hurt to stay in practice. Just as I was getting a terrific shot of the security guards checking a delivery of doughnuts, Ms. Martin arrived.

We introduced ourselves, and I offered to take her picture. Ms. Martin said we'd better go in to her office. We each took a doughnut, and then we got on the elevator. When I asked Ms. Martin if the paper printed many pictures of babies, she seemed surprised. She said no, it didn't.

I was determined to make a good impression. As soon as we got to Ms. Martin's office, I put out my hand and said, "Hello, Ms. Martin, I'm Jim Harris," just the way Kate and I had practiced. Oh, wait. I had already done that. Ms. Martin smiled and asked me to sit down. She seemed like a nice lady.

This interview wasn't anything like the practice one. First, Ms. Martin wanted to know what pictures I had taken recently and why I liked them. I told her I thought I had gotten a pretty good picture of the security guards, and that I enjoyed taking photographs of people working or playing or just being themselves. She seemed to like that answer.

I gave Ms. Martin my resume, and we talked about my previous jobs. Ms. Martin was especially interested in knowing how long I had stayed at them and why I had left. I said that all my previous jobs had been with photography studios, and that I had left them because they were boring. I told Ms. Martin that I didn't like doing the same thing over and over. She said that, in that case, I might like newspaper work.

Ms. Martin said that she needed a photographer to walk around the city five days a week and take pictures of anything interesting that was happening. When I told her I had some pictures like that in my portfolio, she said she would like to see them. While we looked through my portfolio we ate our doughnuts. Ms. Martin poured us each a cup of coffee.

Then Ms. Martin said she was ready for me to take her picture. I asked her to stand by the window, to show that she was interested in what went on outside her office. When I took the picture, she was looking directly at me and smiling her nice smile. I had a good feeling about that picture.

When Ms. Martin asked me what kind of salary I was looking for, I wasn't sure at first what to say. I thought I was supposed to be the one to ask about salary. I named the salary that Kate had mentioned in our practice interview. Ms. Martin laughed. "We can't pay you nearly that much," she said. I told her that as long as the salary was more than I was currently making, I would be happy. "Besides," I said, "it's interesting work and the doughnuts are good." Ms. Martin laughed again.

She told me that the newspaper did offer a good benefits package: medical and dental insurance, disability insurance, paid vacation and sick leave, and a pension plan. I asked her if there was an employee Halloween party. Ms. Martin said there was. She said she had never worked at a newspaper that didn't have a Halloween party.

We plugged my digital camera into Ms. Martin's computer so that she could look at the pictures I had taken. They weren't bad. Ms. Martin said I was the first photographer she had ever interviewed who had offered to take her picture. She said it was obvious that I loved photography. Then she said I could have the job.

I was so overcome with surprise I didn't know what to say. "That's wonderful," I finally said. "Thank you. And you can have the picture."

Questions

1. In the fifth paragraph, Jim writes about
 - a) why he liked the security guards
 - b) reasons he wanted the job
 - c) some things he likes to do
 - d) the practice interview

2. Jim introduced himself when he walked into Ms. Martin's office because
 - a) he wanted to take her picture
 - b) he had not met Ms. Martin before
 - c) he had practiced doing that
 - d) she didn't know his name
3. Jim probably asked to take Ms. Martin's picture because
 - a) he needed pictures for his portfolio
 - b) he likes taking pictures
 - c) he needed a job
 - d) he wanted to remember her
4. From the question Jim asked Ms. Martin in the 10th paragraph, we can assume that he
 - a) is not concerned about benefits
 - b) does not really want the job
 - c) is concerned about benefits
 - d) likes to have a good time
5. Ms. Martin was
 - a) businesslike
 - b) upset
 - c) funny
 - d) hurried
6. Which of the following best describes the working conditions at the newspaper?
 - a) difficult
 - b) depressing
 - c) disorganized
 - d) pleasant
7. The sentence "I was determined to make a good impression" means that Jim
 - a) had forgotten about the practice interview
 - b) wanted Ms. Martin to like him
 - c) was trying not to fall down
 - d) wanted to introduce himself to Ms. Martin
8. Which of the following was probably not one of the reasons Jim got the job?
 - a) He didn't demand a high salary.
 - b) He liked taking pictures of people.
 - c) He liked Halloween parties.
 - d) He didn't like doing the same thing all the time.
9. The fifth paragraph describes
 - a) the practice interview
 - b) the picture Jim took of the security guards
 - c) Ms. Martin's interviewing style
 - d) the security guards
10. It can be inferred from the eighth paragraph that Jim
 - a) had forgotten about taking Ms. Martin's picture
 - b) likes to look out the window
 - c) likes to take pictures of women
 - d) thinks about the pictures he takes

Narrative Lesson 12-03

Jim's Jobs

I got my first job when I was 16 years old and in my sophomore year of high school. I was paid five dollars an hour to work as a janitor in a small office building downtown. I emptied all the wastebaskets, vacuumed the floors, cleaned the bathrooms, and wiped the dust off things. I sprayed cleanser on the windows and then wiped them clean with a paper towel. The job wasn't a lot of fun, but I enjoyed having the money.

My janitor job only took me a few hours every week. School was more important than work, so I always had to be sure to have my homework done on those evenings when I went out to work. And the job didn't involve a whole lot of responsibility. Of course, people were unhappy if one week their wastebaskets weren't emptied or their floor wasn't vacuumed, but the office didn't exactly fall apart. Still, I tried to do the best job I could, and I was happy when the office was clean.

I didn't need much training to do that job. Almost anyone else could have done what I was doing just as well. A 16-year old kid doesn't know very much about cleaning. That's probably why I got paid only five dollars an hour.

I had a number of jobs like that during my teenage years. At a fast-food restaurant, I fried hamburgers and cleaned up after people. And one summer, working as a lifeguard at a pool, I sat on a high chair and made sure nobody drowned. No one did drown, and I got a nice suntan. These jobs didn't pay very much money, but they weren't very difficult, either.

Right after college, I got my first real job, as a portrait photographer. I worked for a studio, at a mall near where I lived. Instead of working just a few evenings a week, I was at my job eight hours a day, and frequently longer. I got in at nine in the morning and often didn't leave until six or seven at night. If people could only have their pictures taken on weekends, I had to work then, too.

That job was the first I ever had that offered benefits. I had life insurance, health insurance, a pension plan, and even a week of paid vacation every year. Had I lost that job, I probably could even have collected unemployment insurance, after I had worked for a year or so.

Of course, I made more than five dollars an hour, because I was doing something that not just anybody could do. I had been trained as a photographer in

college, and my skills made me a valuable employee. I also had responsibilities as a photographer. People depended on me, and I had to supervise some of my coworkers. My work was a big part of my life, rather than just something I did to earn money. And I was doing something I was good at. This was a lot better than vacuuming floors and cleaning bathrooms!

I've done many different things as a photographer. In addition to working in a couple of studios, I've exhibited my photographs in art galleries and worked for a camera shop. Now I'm a photojournalist for the local newspaper.

My father, who was an encyclopedia salesman, worked for one company his entire working life—nearly 50 years. That kind of dedication is not common nowadays. Most people now change their jobs every few years. I've enjoyed different things about all my jobs. But to be honest, I don't think I would want to work as a janitor again, no matter how much I were paid.

Questions

- Which of the following statements is true?
 - Jim did not think his studio job was important.
 - Jim prefers jobs that do not require training.
 - Jim did not like his janitor job.
 - Jim did not have to work overtime as a portrait photographer.
- In the seventh paragraph, Jim implies that he
 - did not think he was paid enough
 - took pride in his job
 - did not think money was important
 - felt overworked
- Jim will probably
 - get a different job someday
 - keep his present job for the rest of his working life
 - consider any job that pays more than five dollars an hour
 - become an encyclopedia salesman when he is older
- The phrase “the office didn't exactly fall apart” means that
 - business continued as usual
 - everyone was happy
 - the office was not dirty
 - nothing was damaged

Narrative Lesson 12-04

5. The last paragraph can be summarized by which statement?
 - a) Difficult jobs generally pay more.
 - b) A photographer need not always work in a studio.
 - c) Being a photojournalist requires a varied background.
 - d) It is possible to enjoy many different jobs during one's lifetime.
6. Jim's statement that "not just anybody" could do his job implies that
 - a) the job was highly paid
 - b) there were not enough people to do the job
 - c) the job was unpleasant
 - d) the job required training
7. Why was Jim happy when the office was clean?
 - a) He could get his homework done.
 - b) He had done a good job.
 - c) People were not angry with him.
 - d) He would be paid.
8. When Jim was working as a lifeguard, the suntan he got was
 - a) a kind of benefit
 - b) required
 - c) difficult to acquire
 - d) helpful
9. The third paragraph can be best summarized by which of the following sentences?
 - a) Sixteen-year-olds shouldn't have cleaning jobs.
 - b) Five dollars an hour is not enough for a cleaning job.
 - c) A job that requires little skill is usually not well paid.
 - d) Cleaning jobs are attractive to most people.
10. From the second paragraph, the reader can infer that
 - a) Jim did not care about the job
 - b) the job interfered with Jim's schoolwork
 - c) the job was not Jim's first priority
 - d) people didn't mind it if Jim did a bad job

Reading With Kate

When I was a girl, my favorite book was *Little House on the Prairie*, by Laura Ingalls Wilder. It's a story about a little girl whose family were pioneers in the United States over a hundred years ago.

The family travel in a covered wagon and have lots of adventures out on the prairie. They also have some hard times—one winter they nearly run out of food—but they are always cheerful. I learned a lot from that book about what it was like to be a pioneer. I learned about farming, building a house, cooking, and other things.

Little Laura, the girl in the story, always tries to be good and brave and kind. When I was reading that book, I pretended that I was her. I knew that Laura didn't have a bike and a bathtub and lots of toys like I did, but I still wanted to be like her.

Later on, when I was in college, my favorite book was *Don Quixote*, by Miguel de Cervantes. Don Quixote is an old man who thinks that he is a valiant knight. He can never see things as they really are. Instead, he sees them through his imagination. He thinks that an ordinary house is a splendid castle and that his worn-out old mare is a strong, beautiful war-horse. Don Quixote has adventures constantly, because his imagination is always getting him into trouble. Reading about all the things he did, I began to wish I could follow my own imagination more.

Having studied Spanish in high school and college, I was able to read part of *Don Quixote* in Spanish. I loved reading my favorite book in its original language, which is very beautiful. I wish I could remember more of the Spanish I learned.

Now I have many favorite books. Since I'm always reading, it's hard to choose one that I like best. I'm interested in stories about true love, and I've always liked *Romeo and Juliet*, by William Shakespeare. Romeo and Juliet are a young couple who fall in love even though their parents are at war. Because they have to keep their love a secret, Romeo and Juliet die tragically in each other's arms. When we were first dating, Jim bought me a copy of *Romeo and Juliet* as a birthday gift. I thought that was very sweet. The last time I read that play, I cried a little. I'm glad that Jim and I were able to fall in love without having to keep it a secret. He'll always be my Romeo.

Another book I enjoyed recently is *The World According to Garp*, by John Irving. Although it's about a man who becomes a writer, a large part of the story is about his mother, Jenny. They are a good pair. Jenny is a very strong woman who works as a nurse during the Second World War. After the war is over, she goes to work at a boys' school, where Garp, her son, grows up. She writes a book that sells millions of copies and becomes a successful author. With the money she earns, she buys a house and opens it to women who have been hurt or abused. I admire the way she welcomes and helps people whom everybody else wants to ignore. I hope that I can be a successful author, just like Jenny.

I guess most of my favorite books are novels or plays or other works of literature. But I like other kinds of books, too. For my birthday last year, Jim bought me an art book. (He knows that a book is a gift I'm always happy to get.) That book has copies of famous impressionist paintings. I love Monet's water lilies. When I'm too tired to read a lot of words, I enjoy looking at those pictures, especially while I'm having a cup of tea. And sometimes I like to read biographies of interesting people whom I admire, like Joan of Arc or Susan B. Anthony or Amelia Earhart.

I also like to read things other than books. Every day, I read the newspaper while I'm eating my breakfast. I like knowing what is going on in the world, and I enjoy reading much more than I do watching television. I also subscribe to a few magazines that come every month. One of them has news and interesting reports from around the world. Another has recipes and ideas for making my home look better. Last month, this magazine gave me the idea of buying some plants to make our apartment greener and more cheerful. Jim and I went out together and bought a fern. It looks beautiful in the living room.

Jim doesn't read as much as I do, but that's because he's a photographer, not a writer. He owns quite a few photography books, with photographs by artists he admires. He also likes mystery books and spy novels. Jim says there's nothing he likes more than a good car chase or a surprising end to a mystery right before bed. Oh, Jim!

Questions

- The last paragraph implies that
 - Jim does not enjoy reading
 - Kate thinks Jim should read more
 - Jim likes to read biographies
 - Jim's taste in reading is different from Kate's
- Kate found *Don Quixote*
 - inspiring
 - troubling
 - informative
 - difficult
- Kate uses the phrase "a good pair" to describe two people who are
 - both helpful to others
 - the same age
 - similar to each other in some way
 - both successful
- When Kate was reading *Little House on the Prairie*, she thought that
 - she knew things that Laura didn't
 - she could be like a pioneer
 - Laura had things that she didn't
 - no one would want to be a pioneer
- To read something in the original language means to read it
 - in a foreign language
 - in the language in which it was written
 - in Spanish
 - in the language one is used to speaking
- Which of the following is not included among Kate's favorite books?
 - a historical novel
 - a book about a writer
 - a romantic play
 - a detective story
- When Kate writes that Don Quixote's imagination is always getting him into trouble, she means that
 - he doesn't see well
 - he gets ideas that are difficult to carry out
 - he doesn't know the difference between a house and a castle
 - he cannot ride his horse
- It can be inferred from the next-to-last paragraph that Kate
 - depends on the television for news
 - is not interested in current events
 - has no time to read anything but books
 - wants to improve the appearance of her home

Narrative Lesson 12-05

9. Kate especially appreciates her art book when
 - a) she is having a birthday
 - b) she has worked hard all day
 - c) she has nothing to read
 - d) she feels like reading a good story
10. Kate compares Jim to Romeo because
 - a) Jim and Romeo both had to keep a secret
 - b) Jim and Romeo are both young
 - c) Jim gave her a copy of Romeo and Juliet for her birthday
 - d) she loves Jim

The History of Employment

Tens of thousands of years ago, there was no such thing as job specialization. Everyone had the same job: surviving. People hunted, fished, and gathered plants to eat. If you found food to eat, you were doing well. If you didn't, you starved.

Eventually, some people began to raise animals, while others planted crops, took care of them, and harvested them when they were ready. Still others made things like shoes, wheels, tables, or buildings.

During the Middle Ages, a period in European history that lasted from about 500 CE to 1500, many people were involved in a system known as feudalism. Under this system, a few educated and wealthy people, called aristocrats, controlled most of the land. In fact, they not only controlled the land, but also held power over many poorer people, called serfs, who lived on the land. Both the aristocrats and the serfs had something to offer each other. The aristocrats provided military protection and government for the serfs in times that were often dangerous and unstable. In return, the serfs worked the land and gave a large part of the crop to their feudal lord.

Over the years, more occupations developed. Millers turned grain into flour, printers produced books, soldiers fought wars, lawyers argued in court, and priests led religious services. However, even as recently as 200 years ago, most people were still farmers. And they were constantly improving the way they did their job.

During the 19th and early 20th centuries, tractors, combines, new kinds of plows, and other laborsaving machines were invented. Thanks to this new technology, fewer people were needed to produce enough food for everybody. In the meantime, mines, factories, and mills were being built, giving people other places to work. Many people chose to move away from farms and do something else.

While farming continues to be an important occupation in parts of the world, in some countries it is practiced by only a small part of the population. This means that many people are free to seek other employment. As a result, a huge variety of occupations is practiced in the modern world. Concert musicians play their instruments for thousands of people, and analysts develop billing systems for corporations. Circus clowns make children laugh, and investment bankers make multimillion-dollar deals. Performance artists swallow fire, and

photographers take pictures of babies. Taxi drivers deliver their customers to their destinations, and carpenters build homes. Millions of people work for their governments.

Sometimes there aren't enough jobs for everybody. Some percentage of the working population is usually unemployed. This means that many people must work at finding suitable work. In today's world, jobs change so fast that workers sometimes have to be retrained to be able to continue with the job they have or to find a new job. This can be a problem for older people who lose their jobs. Fortunately, in many countries, the government helps people who lose their jobs until they can find a new one.

A few people have so much money that they really don't have to have a job if they don't want one. Most of these people, however, do try to find something useful to do, whether they get paid for it or not. It seems to be characteristic of human beings to enjoy being busy and productive.

Questions

1. Which conclusion can be drawn from this text?
 - a) As farming technology has improved, fewer people have chosen to farm.
 - b) In every country of the world, farming is the largest occupation.
 - c) Under the feudal system, most people were aristocrats.
 - d) People have always farmed.
2. Which statement best summarizes paragraph six?
 - a) There are not enough farmers.
 - b) Most people now work for the government.
 - c) These days, people can choose from many occupations besides farming.
 - d) Some people have quit farming to become concert musicians.
3. Why was there only one occupation a long time ago?
 - a) Everyone preferred to farm.
 - b) Everyone had to find ways to stay alive.
 - c) It was difficult to hunt.
 - d) Only a few people knew how to build houses.
4. With which statement would the author probably not agree?
 - a) Sometimes people have to learn to do a new job.
 - b) It is unlikely that everyone will have a job at the same time.
 - c) If someone is unemployed, the government may help them.
 - d) People who lose their jobs should become farmers.
5. Which statement is not true of job specialization?
 - a) People help each other.
 - b) People take care of all their own needs.
 - c) People do the jobs they are best at.
 - d) There are many different jobs.
6. The author believes that
 - a) most people like to have something to do
 - b) farmers have too much to do
 - c) everyone has enough to do
 - d) long ago, people had nothing to do
7. Which statement best summarizes the author's view of new technology?
 - a) It has forced people to move away from farms.
 - b) It has helped people to have more choices in what they do for a living.
 - c) It has not benefited farmers.
 - d) It has not affected farms.
8. It can be inferred from the third paragraph that
 - a) worked the land
 - b) were always in danger
 - c) were often hungry
 - d) did a different kind of work than serfs did
9. People need to be retrained when
 - a) a job they want to do has changed
 - b) there are not enough jobs
 - c) they work on the land
 - d) they want help from the government
10. The first paragraph suggests that
 - a) surviving is still the only job
 - b) thousands of years ago, few people survived
 - c) surviving is the most important job
 - d) people cannot survive if there is job specialization

Narrative Lesson 12-06

The History of Writing

It is thought that writing began about 6,000 years ago. We believe today that it first took the form of small pictures that represented simple ideas or objects. There was a picture for “day,” another one for “hand,” and so forth. Over the course of time, these symbols, which were originally pressed into clay tablets, came to represent groups of sounds rather than ideas. Thus, a symbol might have represented a syllable such as “nar” or “mar.”

The Phoenician people of the ancient Mediterranean developed the first alphabet, in which each letter represented a single sound. They were familiar with Egyptian writing, many of whose symbols represented sounds. Other alphabets were derived from this one. The Latin alphabet, which is used in writing English, came from the Greek alphabet, which came from the Phoenician alphabet.

As writing became easier to use, it became more widespread. It was no longer limited to clay tablets. People began writing on paper made from plants, called papyrus, as early as 3000 BCE. They also wrote on parchment, which was made from the treated skins of animals. Words were even inscribed into different kinds of stone. The Rosetta Stone, which dates from 200 BCE, is one of the most famous of these inscribed stones.

Many literary works existed in oral form for hundreds of years before they were written down. The *Bhagavad-Gita* from India, the *Iliad* from Greece, and the Bible from the Middle East are all ancient. No one knows for sure when they first developed in spoken form and began to be passed from one generation to the next. Creating written texts was difficult in ancient times, because in order to make a copy, someone had to write each word by hand. Most people couldn’t read, and even those who could probably owned very few books.

Paper made with hemp and rags was invented in China around 200 CE. It was lighter and easier to make than papyrus or parchment. Over the course of the next thousand years, this invention slowly made its way to Europe, where it eventually replaced parchment as the primary medium for written texts. By the 13th century, Europeans had begun to produce paper on their own. Because paper was far less expensive than parchment, more texts could be written.

In 1453, Johannes Gutenberg made publishing possible by inventing the movable-type printing press. For the first time, multiple copies of a book could be printed rather than each copy having to be created by hand. The result was a revolution. The cost of books was reduced, and reading and writing became accessible to more people. Broad knowledge in the hands of the average person led to popular movements like the Reformation and laid the foundation for democracy.

Over the centuries, improvements were made to the printing press. Maps, newspapers, etchings, and other documents were printed in addition to books. During the 19th century, the process of making paper from wood pulp was perfected, and books became cheaper and more plentiful than ever.

Throughout the 20th century, the number of published books continued to grow. The Library of Congress in Washington, D.C., the largest library in the world, has over 18 million books. Although books have been published in thousands of languages, more books are now published in English than in any other language.

Since publishing began, writing has taken many new forms. Magazines and daily newspapers have become common throughout the world. Thousands of newspapers are published every day. The largest of these, Japan’s *Yomiuri Shimbun*, has a daily circulation of 10.2 million copies. Color photographs can now be easily printed in books and newspapers; many magazines have color pictures on every page.

Computers have also vastly changed the way we read. With the help of the Internet, information from around the world is now readily available. Billions of pages can be accessed from any desktop computer. Some people have even predicted that computers will make books obsolete, just as the printing press made hand-copied books obsolete. This does not appear to be in any danger of happening. In fact, people continue to buy more books than ever. No matter how fast and efficient computers may become, they will never be able to supply the handsome appearance and satisfying feel of a well-made book.

Questions

1. Johannes Gutenberg's invention of the printing press resulted in
 - a) more jobs for people who copied books
 - b) a revolution in the way people learned to read
 - c) an increase in the price of books
 - d) an increase in the availability of books
2. The phrase "primary medium for written texts" refers to
 - a) the material on which texts were first written
 - b) the material that paper was made from
 - c) the material on which most texts are written
 - d) the cheapest material on which to write texts
3. Why didn't many people own books in ancient times?
 - a) Clay tablets were too heavy to carry around.
 - b) Each book had to be copied individually.
 - c) Paper was easily destroyed.
 - d) Paper was difficult to find.
4. As used in the last paragraph, the word "obsolete" means
 - a) not made anymore
 - b) old
 - c) strange
 - d) expensive
5. When discussing the invention of the printing press, the author implies that
 - a) the cost of publishing has no effect on the number of people learning to read
 - b) publishing has always existed in some form
 - c) more books were written when it became easier to produce them
 - d) people did not care about the price of the books they bought
6. Which of the following statements is true?
 - a) Ancient works of literature could not exist until there was a way of copying them.
 - b) The Iliad was spoken before it was written.
 - c) The Bhagavad-Gita appeared in oral form hundreds of years after it was first written down.
 - d) We have a record of the Bible's beginnings.
7. The sentence "Other alphabets were derived from this one" means that
 - a) all alphabets are similar
 - b) one alphabet was the origin of many
 - c) other alphabets existed before the Phoenician alphabet
 - d) other alphabets are very different from the Phoenician alphabet
8. The writing that was pressed into clay tablets can best be described as
 - a) representing single sounds
 - b) representing groups of sounds
 - c) representing things and ideas
 - d) a simple alphabet
9. With which statement would the author probably agree?
 - a) Hand-copied texts were difficult to read.
 - b) By the time paper was being produced in Europe, clay tablets had become very cheap.
 - c) Books could not be written until paper was invented.
 - d) The invention of paper increased the number of books in the world.
10. The Internet
 - a) makes writing more available
 - b) has had no effect on the way people read
 - c) is causing fewer books to be published
 - d) has caused \$25 billion worth of books to be sold

Narrative Lesson 12-07

The History of Photography

People have always tried to capture the appearance of reality. Over 10,000 years ago, Cro-Magnon humans painted pictures of people and animals on the walls of caves in what is now Spain and France. They dipped fur, sticks, bone, and their fingers in earth to depict the world around them.

Every culture around the world makes images. Mesoamerican cultures created ceramic statues, wall paintings, and bas-reliefs. Chinese and Japanese artists painted beautiful landscapes and portraits. Ancient Greeks created sculptures, pots, and jars. According to a legend, the Greek painter Zeuxis, who lived in the fifth century BCE, once painted a bunch of grapes so realistic that birds tried to eat them. This story is not true, but it shows that some humans have always wanted to imitate nature perfectly.

Over the course of history, some people have been more successful than others in creating these imitations. The sculptures of the Greeks were very lifelike, but the paintings of the Middle Ages weren't quite as realistic. They tended to emphasize a spiritual message rather than a visual one. During the Renaissance, painters learned to use techniques of perspective to create pictures that looked very real. Some historians think that some of those artists used lenses similar to the ones in our modern cameras to portray reality as accurately as possible.

In 1827, a French artist named Joseph Niepce developed a process that created images more realistic than any others. This process was photography. Niepce directed light through a lens, projecting an image onto a piece of paper that was sensitive to light.

At first, creating photographs was difficult. It required numerous chemicals and a great deal of equipment and training. But after the process was made public in 1839, others found new ways of taking pictures and preserving the images. William Talbot developed a process that allowed numerous copies to be generated from a single negative.

Soon, having one's picture taken became fashionable throughout Europe and the United States. By 1857, London alone had 147 photography studios. In Europe, beginning in Paris, buying small pictures of famous people also became the custom. A picture of the Queen of England and her family sold over 100,000 copies. During the American Civil War, photographer Matthew

Brady sent his staff onto battlefields to document the war. For the first time, people at home could see what was going on far away, where the war was at its worst.

Photography has changed and improved greatly over its history. The first photograph Niepce took had to be exposed to the light for eight hours. Within a few decades, however, photographs could be taken in the space of a few seconds. Early pictures required a professional photographer who knew how to use all of the complicated equipment and numerous chemicals needed to develop them.

By the end of the 19th century, however, people could buy cameras they could use themselves. Photographs no longer had to be taken in studios; they could be snapped anywhere. At the turn of the century, color photography began to be widely available, making photographs look even more lifelike.

Today, photography plays a larger role in our life than ever. With video cameras, proud parents can record their children as they take their first steps or set out for their first day at school. Polaroid cameras create instant photographs, which develop themselves as soon as they are taken. Digital cameras and scanners allow people with computers to print their own photographs and to send their pictures by e-mail.

People often carry cameras with them and take pictures at parties, on vacation, on holidays, and whenever they are together with family or friends. They take pictures of wars, landscapes, fashion models, and babies. Creating a realistic picture of life has never been so easy.

Questions

1. What does the author think about imitating nature?
 - a) The Greeks were better at it than the artists of the Renaissance.
 - b) There is no good way to do it in modern times.
 - c) It is natural for humans to want to do it.
 - d) It is usually a waste of time.
2. The purpose of the fourth paragraph is to
 - a) discuss Joseph Niepce's work
 - b) describe the beginnings of photography
 - c) explain how prints are produced from negatives
 - d) describe the equipment that was used by early photographers
3. One result of improvements in photography was that
 - a) exposure times increased
 - b) more complicated equipment was required
 - c) photographs were more often taken in studios
 - d) people became able to take pictures of their own families
4. During the Middle Ages, painting was generally seen as
 - a) a way to convey ideas
 - b) inferior to sculpture
 - c) a way to imitate reality
 - d) a way to imitate the Greeks
5. The author would probably agree that
 - a) early humans were not interested in depicting reality
 - b) photography is not yet generally popular
 - c) people quickly became interested in photography
 - d) realistic images are still difficult to create
6. Paragraph six implies that
 - a) photography was popular only in London
 - b) a new invention can result in new ways of making money
 - c) people were more interested in the Queen of England than in the American Civil War
 - d) photography was a dangerous occupation
7. Which of the following words best describes the early process of photography?
 - a) efficient
 - b) inexpensive
 - c) complicated
 - d) widespread
8. How does photography differ most from painting?
 - a) It requires less time.
 - b) It produces realistic images.
 - c) It requires skill.
 - d) It requires equipment.
9. By saying that some people have been more successful than others in creating imitations of nature, the author is suggesting that
 - a) artists imitated nature better in the past
 - b) imitating nature is difficult
 - c) many people are trying to imitate nature
 - d) not all imitations of nature are good ones
10. Why did Matthew Brady want his staff to take pictures of the war?
 - a) No special equipment was required.
 - b) He wanted people to be well informed.
 - c) He did not have a studio.
 - d) Many people were interested in buying the pictures.

Narrative Lesson 12-08

Grammar: Relative Pronouns

“Jim took his resume, which described his experience, to the interview.” This sentence gives us information about Jim’s resume in the relative clause “which described his experience.” It’s called a “relative” clause because it relates to an antecedent—in this case, “resume.”

The word in the clause that refers specifically to “resume”—“which”—is called a relative pronoun. The relative pronouns that refer to antecedents in this way are “who,” “whom,” “whose,” “that,” and “which.”

In the example above, the relative clause is not essential to the meaning of the sentence. It could just as well be left out: “Jim took his resume to the interview.” We say that such a nonessential clause is nonrestrictive. Nonrestrictive relative clauses are always enclosed in commas, and they always use “which” rather than “that” when referring to things.

Restrictive clauses, on the other hand, contribute essential information. An example is “Jim asked the questions that he had practiced with Kate.” Without the restrictive relative clause “that he had practiced with Kate,” we would have no idea which questions Jim asked. Restrictive clauses are not enclosed in commas, and they use “that” instead of “which.” “Which” can never be omitted, but “that” sometimes is: “Jim asked the questions he had practiced with Kate.”

The relative pronouns “who” and “whom” are used in referring to people. “Who” is used as the subject of a clause: “Jim, who needed a job, looked at the newspaper ads.” “Whom” is used as an object: “The employer whom Jim called had already filled the job.” “Whose,” the possessive form of the relative pronoun, can refer to people or things: “Jim called the company whose ad he had seen.”

Not all relative pronouns have antecedents. In “Jim knew what to do,” “what” refers to an unknown action that is not named in the sentence. Relative pronouns used in this way include “who,” “whom,” and “what.”

Other relative pronouns—“whoever,” “whomever,” and “whatever”—are used when we have some information about the person or thing referred to. The sentence “Jim did whatever Kate told him to do” tells us more about what Jim did than the sentence “Jim knew what to do.”

Questions

1. The children _____ pictures Jim took cried a lot.
 - a) of whom
 - b) whose
 - c) of which
 - d) whom
2. Jim found three ads _____ looked promising.
 - a) where it
 - b) which
 - c) that
 - d) what
3. Kate said Jim should call _____ he wished.
 - a) who
 - b) whoever
 - c) what
 - d) whomever
4. One employer _____ Jim called wanted to interview him.
 - a) when
 - b) whom
 - c) which
 - d) to whom
5. _____ is looking for a job needs a good resume.
 - a) Whoever
 - b) Who
 - c) Whatever
 - d) Whomever
6. Jim’s resume, _____ he had not updated in five years, needed work.
 - a) what
 - b) when
 - c) which
 - d) that
7. Kate told Jim _____ was missing from his resume.
 - a) who
 - b) whatever
 - c) whom
 - d) what
8. Kate, _____ was interviewing Jim, asked him to come in again.
 - a) who
 - b) whomever
 - c) whoever
 - d) whom

Narrative Lesson 12-09

9. Jim found a job _____.
a) what he liked
b) which he liked
c) he liked
d) whom he liked
10. Jim was ready for _____ the job required.
a) which
b) whom
c) that
d) whatever

Grammar: Subjunctive Mood

The mood of a verb says something about how it is used. In English, there are three moods: the indicative (the most common mood), the imperative (used for a request or command), and the subjunctive. The subjunctive mood is used to talk about an unreal or imaginary situation.

A verb in the subjunctive mood may be in the present, past, or past perfect tense. We use the present subjunctive most often in sentences like this: “Kate prefers that Jim be businesslike.” After verbs of wanting, wishing, and commanding, the present subjunctive form—the infinitive without “to”—may be used in a “that” clause. If the main verb is in the past tense, the present subjunctive is still used: “Kate preferred that Jim be businesslike.”

To talk about situations imagined in the present, we use the past subjunctive. This tense is identical to the regular past tense except in the verb “to be,” which uses “were” for every person. In the sentences “I wish I were rich” and “If Jim’s job were more creative, he would like it better,” the past subjunctive form of the verb “to be” is used.

Another form of the past subjunctive is shown in this sentence: “If Jim were to look for a new job, he might find a good one.” This usage combines the past subjunctive of the verb “to be” with the infinitive. It is a way of talking about possible future events in the subjunctive.

For an imagined situation in the past, we use the past perfect subjunctive, which is the same as the ordinary past perfect tense: “If Jim had looked for a job last week, he would have found one by now.” Notice that the verb “to be” does not always follow this rule, as in “In those days, I wished I were rich.”

Because the subjunctive mood expresses unreality, it is often used in a conditional, or “if,” clause, accompanied by a “would” clause. As can be seen in the above examples, the tense of the verb used with “would” depends on the tense of the subjunctive verb. With the past subjunctive, the verb with “would” is in the present tense; with the past perfect subjunctive, the “would” verb is in the present perfect tense.

When an “if” clause refers to a real or possible situation, the subjunctive is not used. For example, when Jim says, “If I am late for the interview, I may not get the job,” he is talking about a definite possibility. Hence he says “am,” not “were,” and does not use a “would” clause.

Questions

1. Jim thought the job _____ already taken.
 - a) will be
 - d) were
 - c) was
 - b) be
2. If Jim had wanted part-time work, he _____ another job.
 - a) had taken
 - b) would have taken
 - c) would take
 - d) took
3. Kate hoped that Jim _____ the job the next day.
 - a) got
 - b) was getting
 - c) had gotten
 - d) would get
4. She suggested that he _____ his resume.
 - a) update
 - b) updated
 - c) would update
 - d) was updating
5. "I wish I _____ a better resume," said Jim.
 - a) had
 - c) have
 - d) would have
 - b) will have
6. "If you worked on your resume more often," said Kate, it _____ up to date.
 - a) would have been
 - b) would be
 - c) was
 - d) will be
7. If Jim _____ his old clothes to the interview, Kate would have been unhappy.
 - a) would wear
 - b) wore
 - c) wears
 - d) had worn
8. If I _____ you," said Kate, "I would be more businesslike."
 - a) would have been
 - c) was
 - b) were
 - d) had been
9. Jim hoped that he _____ given the job because of his experience.
 - a) was
 - b) will be
 - c) would be
 - d) would have been
10. Jim asked that he _____ weekends.
 - a) hadn't worked
 - b) wouldn't work
 - c) didn't have to work
 - d) not have to work

Narrative Lesson 12-10

Grammar: Prepositions

Prepositions are small words that do a big job. They work in sentences—before nouns and sometimes with verbs and adjectives—to show the relationship between one word and another. The previous sentence contains five prepositions: “in,” “before,” “with,” “to,” and “between.”

Together, a preposition and the noun following it are called a prepositional phrase. The noun is the object of the preposition. The object of a preposition does not have to be a noun—it can also be a pronoun, a gerund (a verb used as a noun), or an entire phrase or clause used as a noun. In the sentence “After updating his resume, Jim practiced the interview,” the object of the preposition “after” is the gerund phrase “updating his resume.”

Sometimes a preposition consists of more than one word. In the sentence “According to Jim, his portfolio was updated,” “according to” is a group preposition.

Here is a partial list of prepositions, not including those mentioned above: “across,” “as,” “as well as,” “at,” “because of,” “behind,” “beside,” “beyond,” “by,” “except,” “for,” “in front of,” “in spite of,” “instead of,” “like,” “on,” “out of,” “over,” “through,” “until,” and “within.” Since there are many prepositions, each one able to be used in various ways with differing meanings, a good way to learn their correct use is simply to pay attention to them while listening or reading.

There are, however, patterns. Some adjectives, for example, are always used with certain prepositions. We say we are “angry at,” “happy with,” or “tired of” something, and that we are “angry with” or “grateful to” someone. In the same way, certain verbs take prepositional phrases instead of direct objects. An example is “Kate agreed with Jim.”

In addition, a few general rules exist. “At” is used to specify a time: “Jim’s interview was at 10:00.” And “on” is used to specify a day or a date: “Be here on Monday.” But in speaking of months, one uses “in”: “Jim will start his new job in September.”

As their name implies, prepositions often indicate position. In the sentence “Jim sat on the chair,” “on” tells Jim’s position in relation to the chair. A slightly different preposition, “onto,” indicates not only position but also movement: “Jim fell onto the floor.”

The prepositions “in” and “into” show position and movement in a similar way: “Jim was in the room;” “Jim came into the room.”

Just as “to” indicates movement toward, “from” indicates movement away. Many verbs, however, do not require “from.” In the sentence “Jim left the room,” it isn’t necessary to say “from the room.”

Questions

1. Jim was tired _____ his job.
 - a) in
 - b) about
 - c) of
 - d) by
2. He disliked his job _____ the crying children.
 - a) in front of
 - b) to
 - c) instead of
 - d) because of
3. Jim tried to make the children laugh _____ playing with a toy.
 - a) until
 - b) by
 - c) about
 - d) from
4. Jim found three ads _____ the newspaper.
 - a) of
 - b) on
 - c) at
 - d) in
5. Kate was not happy _____ Jim’s resume.
 - a) from
 - b) with
 - c) at
 - d) for
6. Jim hadn’t updated his resume _____ a long time.
 - a) since
 - b) after
 - c) in
 - d) before
7. He didn’t want to take anything _____ his resume.
 - a) out of
 - b) out
 - c) into
 - d) about

8. Jim stood _____ the door of the office.
a) on
b) at
c) through
d) out of
9. Kate wanted Jim to shake hands _____ sitting down.
a) except for
b) until
c) before
d) beside
10. "You can start two weeks _____ today," said Kate.
a) from
d) before
c) beyond
b) until